



ASTON MARTIN

DB 9

An invitation to join the AMOC

The sporting spirit of the 1930s exists today in one of the world's most exclusive car clubs. Enthusiasts in nearly 60 countries are united by an interest in iconic cars with an enviable pedigree.

Enjoy the company of like-minded owners in a wide range of activities: social evenings, weekends away or motoring tours.

Something more competitive? AMOC Concours are a benchmark for connoisseurs of fine motorcars.

A need for speed? We organize track days, sprints and hill climbs as well as circuit racing in venues such as Silverstone, Goodwood and Lime Rock in the USA.



Mirroring Club activity, the Aston Martin Heritage Trust is an educational charity dedicated to the history of the marque from the earliest days almost a century ago. It shares the magnificent 15thC Oxfordshire barn which is the international headquarters, museum and archive. Why not log onto our website to discover more about these unique organizations, and enjoy a hearty welcome from us all.

The Aston Martin Owners Club
Drayton St. Leonard, Wallingford, Oxford,
England, OX10 7BG
Telephone: +44 (0) 1865 400 400
Facsimile: +44 (0) 1865 400 200
E-Mail: hqstaff@amoc.org
Website: www.amoc.org



1.....	Introduction
2.....	Vehicle Security
3.....	Before Driving
4.....	Controls
5.....	Driving
6.....	Convertible Roof (Volante)
7.....	Climate Control
8.....	Audio
9.....	Hands-Free Phone
10.....	Satellite Navigation
11.....	Maintenance
12.....	Specifications
A.....	Service
B.....	Assistance
C.....	Warranty
D.....	Dealer Directory
E.....	Alphabetical Index

Whilst every effort has been made to make sure the accuracy of the particulars contained in this Owner's Guide, neither the manufacturer nor the Dealer, by whom this Owner's Guide is supplied, shall in any circumstances be held responsible for any inaccuracy or the consequences thereof.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or other means without prior written permission from Aston Martin Lagonda Limited.

The manufacturer reserves the right to vary specifications without notice in accordance with its policy of continual product improvement.

Produced by the Technical Publications Department
ASTON MARTIN LAGONDA LIMITED

Banbury Road

Gaydon

WARWICK

Warwickshire

CV35 0DB

England

Telephone (+44) 01926 644300

Fax (+44) 01926 644733

Issue 10 - January 2009

Part Number - 9G43-19A321-HD

Introduction

Contents

Welcome	1.6
Component Location	1.7
Vehicle Identification	1.8
Data Recording	1.8
Reporting Safety Defects	1.9
Vehicle Provenance.....	1.10

CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 Warning

Warning

** Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm.*

Perchlorate Material

Certain components of this vehicle such as air bag modules, seat belt pre-tensioners and roll over protection devices may contain Perchlorate Material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

Go to www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate for more information.

Welcome

to your new Aston Martin.

This Owner's Guide, along with other publications included in your literature pack, provides information which will enhance your pleasure from owning and driving your Aston Martin.

This Owner's Guide has been designed to explain the vehicle's operation and to make the control of its systems easy to understand and operate.

All new owner's are recommended to carefully study the contents of this Owner's Guide prior to driving.

This Owner's Guide forms part of the essential vehicle equipment for homologation purposes and must stay with the vehicle at all times.

Quick Reference Guide

A summary of the more regular in-vehicle operations can be found in the Quick Reference Guide. This useful guide can be found in the Armrest Cubby box.

Warnings, Cautions and Notes

The following Warnings, Cautions and Notes are used within this Owner's Guide to call your attention to specific types of information.

Warnings



Warning

** Identifies procedures which must be followed precisely to help avoid the risk of personal injury.*

Cautions



Provided to indicate procedures which must be followed precisely to reduce the possibility of damage to your vehicle.

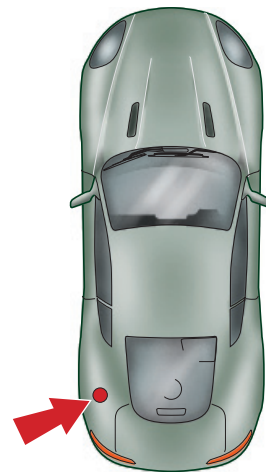
Notes



Provided to indicate procedures which will help to avoid difficulties in the operation of your vehicle.

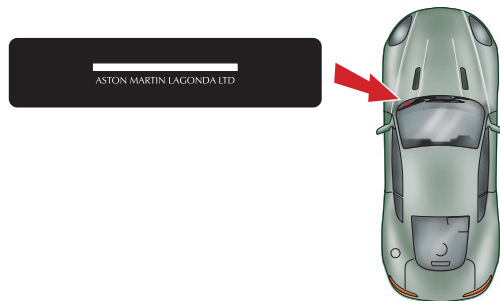
Component Location

All directions for locating components are described as viewed from the driver's seat, i.e. the fuel filler cap indicated on this diagram will be described as 'located at the rear left side of the vehicle'.

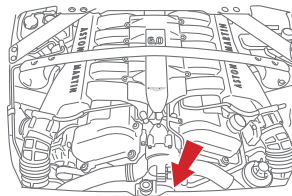


Vehicle Identification

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is shown in the left bottom corner of the windshield and is recorded as a barcode on the door pillar.



The Vehicle Identification Plate, attached to the front subframe behind the engine bay front cross member (viewed from above), is model and market dependant:



The vehicle identification number is also stamped into the floorpan in the right side footwell.

 *To view the vehicle identification number stamped into the floorpan lift the carpet up, from the front, and then lift the sound deadening material.*

Data Recording

Computers in your vehicle are capable of recording detailed data, potentially including but not limited to information such as:

The use of restraint systems including seat belts by the driver and passengers

Information about the performance of various systems and modules in the vehicle

Information related to engine, throttle, steering, brake or other system status

Any of this information could potentially include information regarding how the driver operates the vehicle, potentially including but not limited to information regarding vehicle speed, brake, throttle application or steering input. This information may be stored under regular operation, in a crash or near crash event.

Reporting Safety Defects

This information may be read out and used by:

- Aston Martin
- Service and repair facilities
- Law enforcement or government agencies
- Others who may assert a right or obtain your consent to know such information

North America

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Aston Martin Lagonda (North America) Inc. 533 MacArthur Boulevard, NJ 07430-2326.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your Dealer, or Aston Martin Lagonda (North America) Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hot-line toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada in addition to notifying Ford of Canada.

To contact Transport Canada, call their toll-free number: 1-800-333-0510

Vehicle Provenance						
Model:	e.g. Manual, Automatic			First Owner:	Third Owner:	
	Color:				Selling Dealer:	Selling Dealer:
		Body Exterior	Interior Trim/ Piping	Interior Veneers	Delivery Date:	Delivery Date:
Vehicle Identification Number:				Second Owner:	Fourth Owner:	
As on the VIN plate						
				Selling Dealer:	Selling Dealer:	
				Delivery Date:	Delivery Date:	

Fifth Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:

Sixth Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Vehicle Security

Contents

Introduction.....	2.2	Trunk Lid	2.8	Alarm	2.11
Emotion Control Unit.....	2.2	Trunk Emergency Release	2.9	Reduced Guard.....	2.12
Emergency Key	2.4	Deadlocking	2.10	Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS)	2.12
Unlocking and Opening.....	2.5	Drive-Away Locking.....	2.10	Garage Door Opener	2.14
Locking.....	2.6	Approach Lighting.....	2.10	Personalization.....	2.18
Master Lock Switch.....	2.7	Homesafe	2.11		
Fuel Flap Release	2.8				

Introduction

This vehicle is protected by an electronic security system. Two levels of alarm system are available:

- Standard
- High specification (option) - includes an interior movement sensor and a tilt sensor

Vehicle protection is enhanced by a Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) which provides engine immobilization if the wrong vehicle key is used.

The total vehicle security system includes:

- Remote arming and disarming
- Perimeter sensing
- Remote door, trunk lid, fuel flap release lock and unlock

- Guard reduction mode
- Alarm siren with battery back-up (in markets where audible sirens are permitted)
- Random code encryption to prevent electronic scanning or grabbing of the vehicle key identity code
- Interior movement sensor (high specification alarm system only)
- Tilt sensor (high specification alarm system only)
- Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) (engine immobilization)

With the vehicle armed, any attempt to forcibly open a door, the trunk lid or the hood will result in full alarm activation.

Emotion Control Unit

The vehicle is supplied with two vehicle keys¹ (Emotion Control Units), a Glass key and a Spare key, and an Emergency key. A leather holder is provided to hold the 'in use' vehicle key when not in the Ignition Control.



Keep the spare key in a safe place. Do not leave a vehicle key in the vehicle when unattended.

 *If a vehicle key is lost, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.*

¹. Manufactured by  **STRATTEC** 9G43-70290-AG.

⚠ FCC Warning

*** 'Note' - Changes not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

FCC - Radio Frequency Devices

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Radio Standard Specification (Canada)

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device

Do not leave a vehicle key in the vehicle when unattended.



ASTON MARTIN

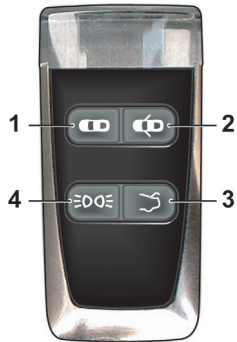
Vehicle Key Security Functions

- 1 LOCK** - Press once to lock the doors and alarm enable. The seats and door rear view mirror positions are memorized. The vehicle will deadlock after 25 seconds.

(Refer to 'Locking', page 2.6).

(Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.5).

(Refer to 'Deadlocking', page 2.10).



- 2 UNLOCK** - Press once to unlock the Driver's door only. Press twice, within three second, to unlock all doors (Refer to 'Unlocking and Opening', page 2.5). The seats and door rear view mirrors move to their memorized positions (Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.5).
- 3 TRUNK OPEN** - Press once to enable the trunk catch. Press twice, within three seconds, to release the trunk catch (Refer to 'Trunk Lid', page 2.8).
- 4 APPROACH LIGHT** - Press to activate the front and rear side lamps and interior lights (Refer to 'Approach Lighting', page 2.10).

Emergency Key

In the unlikely event that either the vehicle key fails to operate or the vehicle battery is fully discharged use the Emergency key to lock or unlock the vehicle.

Insert the Emergency key in the door lock and rotate fully towards the front of the vehicle, then release, to centrally lock the vehicle, disable the trunk lid and fuel flap release switches. **The alarm will not be activated.**



Unlocking and Opening

To centrally unlock the vehicle, enable the trunk lid and fuel flap release switches, rotate fully towards the rear of the vehicle, then release. If the vehicle was armed, the alarm will activate.

To deactivate the alarm insert the vehicle key (even if the vehicle key has lost all power) into the Ignition Control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON).

 If the vehicle battery is fully discharged the Emergency key will **only** lock or unlock a door.

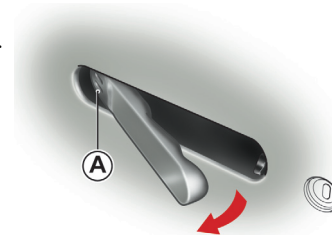
 If the vehicle key has lost all power it will start the engine if required.

 The front seats and door rear view mirrors will not move to a preset position if the vehicle is unlocked using the emergency key.

Point the vehicle key towards the vehicle and press the  button once to unlock the drivers door and disarm the vehicle. The direction indicators will flash twice, indicating that the alarm has been deactivated. Press twice to unlock the passenger door and enable the trunk lid catch and fuel flap release button.

 Stand within 16ft (5m) of the vehicle.

Push at point A and grab the emerging door release. Pull the door release to open the door.



 If preferred you can unlock all doors and enable the trunk lid and fuel flap release switches with one press of the  button (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.18).

 For ease of use at night white LEDs are incorporated into the door handles. An LED will come ON in both door handles when the vehicle is unlocked. A door LED will go OFF once the door is opened. If a door is not opened the LEDs will go OFF after two minutes.

 If the vehicle has been opened using the spare key and the seats or door rear view mirrors have been adjusted, the seats and door rear view mirrors will move to the positions memorized by the key which is being used (Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.5).

 If the vehicle key is left in the Ignition Control while a door is open an audible warning will sound, until the vehicle key is removed.

 As the vehicle is unlocked, the interior lamps come ON for five minutes. The lamps will go OFF 30 seconds after doors are closed or when the vehicle is started.

 If the door is left open the door puddle lamp will go OFF after 30 seconds.

Unlocking From Inside the Vehicle

If Reduced Guard (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.12) or Drive-away locking (Refer to 'Drive-Away Locking', page 2.10) was activated before the vehicle was locked, one pull of a door handle will centrally unlock the doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.

When opening a door from inside the vehicle after Reduced Guard has been made active, the vehicle alarm will sound.

Press the  button on the vehicle key to deactivate at any time during activation (there is approximately a ten second delay before the alarm is cancelled).

 **If the reduced guard button was not activated before locking the vehicle, deadlocking, interior movement (option) and tilt (option) sensors are enabled. Passengers will not be able to unlock a door from the inside (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.12).**

Locking

Make sure that both doors, the trunk lid and the hood are closed. Point the vehicle key towards the vehicle and press the  button **once** to lock the doors, disable the trunk and fuel flap release switches and set the vehicle alarm.

The direction indicators will flash once as the alarm is activated (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.18).

The seats and door rear view mirror positions are memorized and will be recalled the next time the vehicle is opened using the same vehicle key (Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.5).

 **Do not leave the vehicle key in the trunk. If the trunk lid is closed there will be no access to the contents of the trunk.**

! If passengers are to stay in the vehicle after it has been locked, Reduced Guard must be activated before locking. This enables passengers to open the doors from inside the vehicle (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.12).

 Stand within 16ft (5m) of the vehicle.

 The vehicle will arm and deadlock after 25 seconds (Refer to 'Deadlocking', page 2.10).

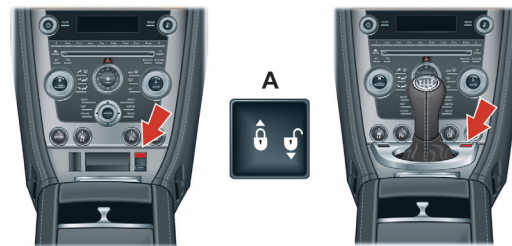
 If the vehicle is locked with the trunk lid open, the vehicle will lock and arm but deadlocking, tilt (option) and interior movement (option) sensors will not activate. Close the activate the complete alarm system.

Automatic Re-locking

If the vehicle is locked and then unlocked but a door or the trunk lid is not opened within two minutes, then the vehicle will automatically lock and arm again.

Master Lock Switch

Doors, fuel flap and trunk lid release switches may be locked and unlocked by using the master lock switch (A). Press the switch to lock. Pull back on the switch to unlock.



If the vehicle is locked using the master lock switch, one pull of a door handle will centrally unlock the doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.

The master lock switch will not operate if the vehicle has been locked from the outside.

Operation of the master lock switch will override 'Drive away locking' (Refer to 'Drive-Away Locking', page 2.10).

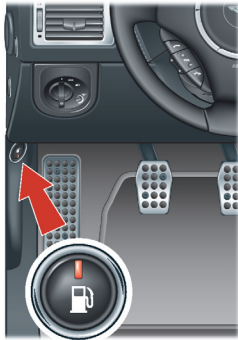
 One pull back on the master lock switch will also switch ON the LED in the door handles (for 10 seconds or until the door is opened). This may aid access for a passenger at night time.

 In the event of a vehicle accident the doors will automatically unlock.

Fuel Flap Release

Push the fuel flap release button to open the fuel flap.

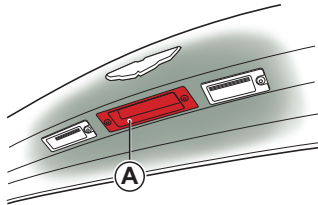
The fuel flap release is disabled when the vehicle is locked or when the vehicle moves off.



Trunk Lid

Trunk Lid Release

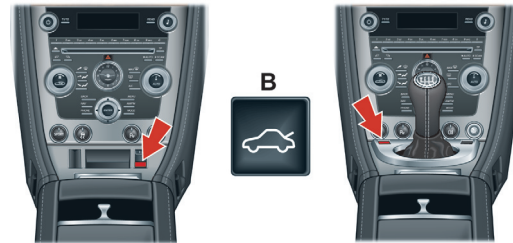
If the  button on the vehicle key is pressed **once** the trunk lid release catch will be enabled. With the trunk catch enabled press the trunk switch (A) and raise the lid.



If the  button on the vehicle key is pressed **twice** (within three seconds) the trunk catch will enable and release the trunk lid. Lift the lid.

 *If the vehicle is locked and armed the alarm system will be disabled and the direction indicators will flash twice (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.18). The doors will stay locked.*

Trunk Lid Release Switch



Pull back on the trunk lid release switch (B). The trunk catch will release. Lift the lid.

Closing the Trunk Lid

Using the leather tab lower the trunk lid and make sure that the trunk lid catch engages.

Lock the trunk by pressing the  button on the vehicle key. The direction indicators will flash once as the alarm is activated (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.18).

 *Always make sure that the trunk is securely closed after use. The trunk interior lamps will stay ON for 30 minutes if the trunk lid is left partially open.*

Vehicle Locked - Trunk Open

 ***Do not leave the vehicle key in the trunk. If the trunk lid is closed there will be no access to the contents of the trunk.***

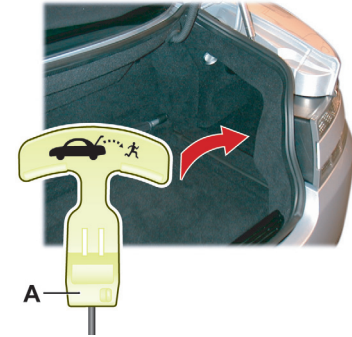
 *To use the battery conditioner (Refer to 'Battery Conditioner', page 11.35) the trunk has to be left open (trunk lid down but not latched).*

If the vehicle is locked while the trunk lid is open, the vehicle will lock and arm (deadlocking, tilt (option) and interior movement (option) sensors will not activate).

If the trunk lid is then closed (latched) deadlocking, tilt (option) and interior movement (option) sensors will activate and the whole vehicle will be locked and armed.

Trunk Emergency Release

The trunk lid can be opened from inside the trunk by pulling the luminous emergency release handle (A).



Deadlocking

 ***If passengers are to stay in the vehicle after locking, the reduced guard switch must be activated before locking (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.12).***

The vehicle will automatically deadlock after 25 seconds after arming the vehicle. When the vehicle is deadlocked, the doors cannot be opened from the inside by pulling the interior door handle.

To open the doors activate the vehicle key.

Drive-Away Locking

When drive-away locking is active the central locking system will automatically engage as the vehicle moves off. Both doors and the trunk lid will lock. This function prevents unwanted access to the vehicle when stopped at traffic lights, etc.

One pull of a door handle will centrally unlock both doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.

 *In the event of a vehicle accident the doors will automatically unlock.*

 *Drive-away locking (Auto Lock) is factory set to active (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.18).*

Approach Lighting

When approaching the vehicle the side lamps and interior lights can be activated by pressing the  button on the vehicle key.

The time that the side lamps stay ON is programmable (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.18).

Homesafe

! If Homesafe has been activated with the master lamp switch at position 3 (headlamps ON), the main beam will stay ON. Make sure that the master lamp switch is at position 1 before exiting (Refer to 'Master Lamp Switch', page 4.3).

When exiting the vehicle and the vehicle key has been removed, flash the main beam (pull the left stalk forwards and release without latching), to active Homesafe. The main beam and rear lamps will then stay ON for a determined amount of time and then extinguish. The time that the main beam and rear lamps stay ON is programmable (Refer to 'Personalization', page 2.18).

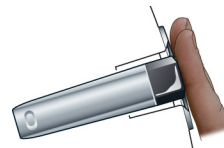
Alarm

On alarm activation a siren will sound for a 25 seconds cycle (ten cycles maximum) and the direction indicators flash for five minutes after which the security system returns to the armed state. The doors and trunk will stay locked throughout.

 Markets where visible alarm signals and audible sirens are permitted.

Deactivate the alarm at any time during activation by pressing the  button on the vehicle key or by inserting the vehicle key into the Ignition Control (position 'II').

There is approximately a ten second delay before the alarm is cancelled).



Interior Movement Sensor (Option)

When the vehicle is locked and armed the interior movement sensor will sense movement inside the vehicle. If movement is detected it will activate the vehicles alarm system (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.12).

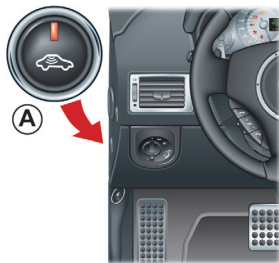
Tilt Sensor (Option)

When the vehicle is locked and armed the tilt sensor will sense if the vehicle is tilted i.e., if the vehicle is being raised on a jack. If vehicle tilt is detected it will activate the vehicles alarm system (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.12).

Reduced Guard

When guard reduction is active deadlocking, interior movement (option) and tilt (option) sensors are disabled. This allows passengers to open the doors from the inside by pulling the interior door handle and passengers or animals to be left in the vehicle without activating the security system.

With the vehicle key in position '0' or 'I' or within 60 seconds of removing the vehicle key the reduced guard button can be activated (The vehicle key must have been released from position 'II' first).



Press the reduced guard button (A) to activate (button LED ON). Reduced guard stays active until the vehicle key is inserted in the Ignition Control and moved to position 'II' (ignition ON).

! If passengers are to stay in the vehicle after it has been locked, reduced guard must be active before locking. This allows passengers to open the doors from inside the vehicle.

When a door is opened from the inside the vehicle alarm will sound. Press the button on the vehicle key to deactivate at any time during activation (there is approximately a ten second delay before the alarm is cancelled).

Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS)

The Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) is a fully automatic engine immobilizer.

In the event of the loss of the vehicle key, a duplicate vehicle key can be created and programmed from the spare key by your Aston Martin Dealer.

Starting the Engine

When the alarm system is disarmed and the vehicle key is in the Ignition Control, the PATS controller sends a signal to the vehicle key. The vehicle key must respond with a valid code before engine start will be enabled. If a valid code is received, the ignition system will operate normally.

If the vehicle key code is not received, or is invalid, engine start stays disabled.

PATS Status

The PATS system state is shown by the red symbol on the instrument cluster (A).



Ignition	Action (Valid code)
Position 'II' (ON).	Symbol comes ON for three seconds.
Position '0' and 'I' (OFF).	Symbol will flash.
OFF and vehicle key removed from the Ignition Control.	Symbol will flash for five minutes or one minute after the vehicle is locked using the vehicle key.

Fault Mode

If the status symbol continues flashing when the ignition is switched ON, the vehicle will stay immobilized.

Should this situation arise try removing and then inserting the vehicle key back to position 'II' in the Ignition Control. If this is unsuccessful try the spare key. If successful, source a replacement for the faulty vehicle key. If problems persist with the vehicle key, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.



ASTON MARTIN

Garage Door Opener

The Garage Door Opener (Homelink® Universal Transceiver) operating buttons and transceiver are located in the interior rear view mirror.

The transceiver can be programmed to transmit the radio frequencies of up to three different transmitters used to activate garage doors, entry gates, home lighting, security systems, or other radio frequency operated devices.

For information, or for assistance, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Alternatively contact Homelink directly at www.homelink.com or call the HomeLink Hot-line:

Toll-free: 1-800-355-3515

Warnings

**** Do not use the transceiver with any garage door opening system that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature as required by safety standards. A garage door opening system which cannot detect an object, signalling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current safety standards. Using a garage door opening system without these features increases risk of serious injury or death.***

**** When programming the transceiver to a garage door opening system, make sure that people, the vehicle and objects are out of the way to prevent potential harm or damage as the gate or garage door will activate during the programming.***

 ***As a security precaution make sure that all programming is erased in the HomeLink system before selling this vehicle.***

 A full list of radio frequency operated devices can be either obtained via the HomeLink Hot-line or through the HomeLink compatibility list which is provided on the HomeLink website.

 Keep the original transmitter for future use or programming procedures if, for example, you purchase a new vehicle.

 This device may suffer from interference if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. This interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter as well as the in-vehicle transceiver.

 The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Programming

 Step 1 erases all programming. It only requires completing if programming Homelink for the first time or when erasing all existing programming. It does not have to be followed to program the other HomeLink buttons.

 The HomeLink buttons can be reprogrammed individually but not individually erased. Step 1 must be completed to erase all programming.

1. Press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons, releasing only when the HomeLink LED begins to flash after 20 seconds.

All three buttons are now cleared. The HomeLink system is now in setting mode.

2. Hold the original remote control of the device to be programmed at a distance of 4-12 in (10-30 cm) away from the HomeLink transmitter unit keeping the LED in view all the time.



 The distance between the remote control and the transmitter unit depends on the system being programmed. You may require several attempts at different distances. Maintain each setting position for at least 15 seconds before trying out another.

3. Using both hands, simultaneously push the remote control button and the desired button (1, 2 or 3).



4. The LED will flash, first slowly and then rapidly. When the LED flashes rapidly, release both buttons. The rapid flashing LED indicates successful programming of the new frequency signal.

Operation

The vehicle should be within the operating range of the gate or garage door opener and the ignition should be switched ON.

The HomeLink system operates the garage door opener (or other device) in exactly the same way as the original remote control.

When you have programmed the HomeLink system, press the appropriate button 1, 2, or 3 on the control panel to activate the garage door opener.

The LED will come ON when the button on the control panel is pressed.



For convenience, the original remote control of the device may also be used at any time.

In the case of a standard code, the HomeLink LED is constantly ON throughout the transmission process. For use with compatible systems, no further action is necessary.



If HomeLink now does not operate the garage door opener (or other device), this may be because the original remote control has a rolling code feature (Refer to 'Rolling Code Synchronization', page 2.16).

Rolling Code Synchronization

Check, by going through the following steps, whether or not the garage door opener (or other device) is equipped with a rolling code feature.

- Look in the garage door opener manual for clarification
- The remote control appears to program HomeLink but HomeLink does not operate the garage door opener

- Press and hold down the programmed HomeLink button. With a rolling code system, the HomeLink LED flashes quickly for a short time and then stays ON constantly for two seconds. This pattern repeats itself for up to 20 seconds.

If HomeLink was programmed with a rolling code system, then after the end of the programming period it must be synchronized with this system again before it will function properly.

Follow the instructions below for Rolling Code Synchronization (the procedure will take less time with a second person to help).

The vehicle must be within operating range of the garage door opener with the ignition ON. Make sure you comply with the safety instructions even when synchronizing the rolling code.

1. Locate the Training button (programming button) on the garage door opener motor head unit. Exact location and color of the button may vary by gate or garage door opener brand (refer to the operating instructions of the garage door opener 'Training additional remote controls').
2. Press the Training button (programming button) on the garage door opener motor head unit (which will usually activate a 'training' light).

 Following step 2, there are typically 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3.

3. Firmly press and release the programmed HomeLink button. Press and release the HomeLink button a second time to complete the training process (Some garage door openers may require this procedure a third time to complete the training).

The garage door opener should now recognize the HomeLink signal and activate when the HomeLink button is pressed.

The last two buttons may now be programmed if this has not previously been done (Refer to 'Programming', page 2.15).

Reprogramming

If a HomeLink button has been programmed to activate a device, and you now wish to use this button to operate a different device, proceed as follows. This procedure will erase the existing programming of the respective HomeLink button.

1. Press the appropriate HomeLink button 1, 2, or 3 which requires reprogramming and keep holding it for about 20 seconds until the LED starts flashing slowly. Do not release until step 4 has been completed.
2. When the LED begins to flash slowly (after approximately 20 seconds), hold the remote control of the device you wish to train approximately 4-12 in (10-30 cm) away from the HomeLink transmitter unit - keeping the LED in view.

 *The distance between the remote control and the HomeLink transmitter unit depends on the system being learned. You may require several attempts at different distances. Maintain each setting position for at least 15 seconds before trying out another.*

3. Now activate (press) the remote control and keep it pressed.
4. The HomeLink LED will flash, first slowly and then rapidly. When the LED begins to flash rapidly, release both buttons.

Personalization

A number of security functions can be personalized. The functions are set by using the Infotainment **SCREEN**.

- 1 **ON/OFF** - Infotainment centre ON and OFF
- 2 **SCREEN** - Presents options, menus and information.
- 3 **TUNING** - Alternative method for navigating through the menus. Turn left or right to navigate in the menus.
- 4 **MENU** - Opens the main menu.
- 5 **ENTER** - Select in the menu, activate a selection.
- 6 **JOYSTICK** - Navigate up or down in the menus
- 7 **BACK** - Navigate back in the menu, cancel a selection.



Selection

With the vehicle key in position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control, press **MENU** and navigate to the required setting, press **ENTER**. Use the **JOYSTICK** to make a selection, press **ENTER** to accept.

Menu

1) car settings...

- 1) Light settings...
 - 1) Lock confirm. light
 - 2) Unlock confirm. light
 - 3) Approach light duration...
 - 1) 30, 60 or 90 seconds
 - 4) Homesafe light duration...
 - 1) 30, 60 or 90 seconds
- 2) Lock settings...
 - 1) Doors auto lock
 - 2) Doors unlock...
 - 1) All doors
 - 2) Driver door, then all
- 3) Information...
 - 1) VIN number...



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Before Driving

Contents

Checks Before Driving	3.2	Advanced Restraints System	3.18	Accessory Sockets	3.31
Seat Controls	3.2	Child Safety	3.23	Ashtray and Cigar Lighter (Option)	3.32
Seat Memory Function.....	3.5	Child Seats.....	3.24	Electric Windows	3.32
Steering Wheel	3.7	Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR).....	3.25	Reading Lamps.....	3.33
Interior Mirrors	3.8	Tether Anchorages	3.26	Coat Hooks.....	3.34
Door Mirrors.....	3.8	Deployable Rollbars (Volante)	3.28	Umbrella.....	3.34
Restraints System	3.10	Interior Storage	3.29		
Seat Belts.....	3.12	Media Devices.....	3.30		
Airbags	3.16				

Checks Before Driving

Inspect your vehicle to make sure that everything is according to the information and specifications in this Owner's Guide.

Outside the vehicle:

- Visually check the road wheels, nuts and tires
- Check that all windows, mirrors and lamps are clear and unobstructed
- Check that the trunk lid, hood and fuel filler flap are securely closed
- Check the operation of all lamps

Once inside the vehicle:

- Check that the doors are securely closed
- Check that the seat, mirrors and steering wheel adjustments are correct
- Check that all gauges and indicators are reading correctly (Refer to 'Controls', page 4.1)
- Check that the seat backs are in an upright position and that the seat latch is engaged
- Check that all occupants have fastened their seat belts

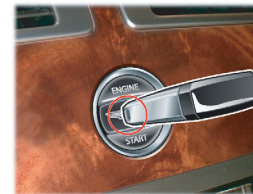
Seat Controls

Warning

*** Do not attempt to adjust the seat whilst driving.**

The seats can be adjusted while the vehicle key is in the Ignition Control. Gently insert the vehicle key up to position 'I' (press down until the instrument cluster and Infotainment centre lights come ON) and release.

 **The vehicle key must only be inserted into the Ignition Control with the two indents first, as shown. Attempting to insert the larger end first the key may damage the Ignition Control.**



They can also be adjusted:

- Up to six minutes after a door is unlocked and before the vehicle key is inserted into the Ignition Control
- Up to six minutes after the vehicle key is removed from the Ignition Control

If the seat operation times out:

- Place the vehicle key in the Ignition Control
- Close or open a door

Seat Controls

The seat adjustment controls are located each side of the centre console (A).

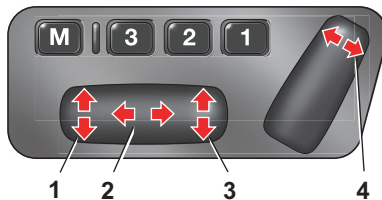


ASTON MARTIN

Seat Position

- 1 Raise or lower the **front** of the seat.
- 2 Move the seat **forwards** or **rearwards**.
- 3 Raise or lower the **rear** of the seat.
- 4 Increase or decrease the **angle of the seat back**.

 When making seat adjustments, i.e. moving the seat base rearwards, raising or lowering the seat base, the seat back will motor forwards whenever it approaches trim panels located behind it. If the seat back is tilted backwards the seat base will move forwards if the seat back approaches trim panels.



Seat Comfort

 The ignition must be ON before the heated seat and lumbar support can be operated.

- 5 Press forwards or rearwards to increase or reduce the **lower lumbar support**.
- 6 Press forwards or rearwards to increase or reduce the **upper lumbar support**.

- 7 Press to the rear for the **lower heat setting**, press to the front for the **higher heat setting**. A LED shows which heat level is active. To switch OFF press to the centre position (LED OFF).



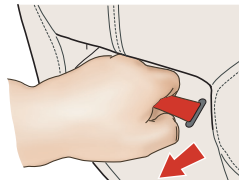
Seat Memory Function

Seat Back Release

Press and hold in button A to release the seat back, once the seat has been moved forward release the button and manually move the seat back forwards.



 In the unlikely event of power failure a manual release strap is provided in the seat back. Pull and hold the strap to release the seat back and then move the seat back forward.



Warnings

- * Make sure that there is nothing in front of, behind, or under the seat during adjustment.*
- * To avoid injury, make sure that children do not play with the switches.*
- * If the seat accidentally begins to move, press any seat control button to stop the seat.*

The position of the driver and front passenger seats can be memorized and recalled. Three different driving position profiles can be entered in the memory. The memory position of the driver's seat also includes both door rear view mirrors.

The Memory function buttons are located in the seat adjustment controls which are located each side of the centre console (A).



Setting a Preset Position

Warning

*** Do not attempt to adjust the seat whilst driving.**

 When making seat adjustments, i.e. moving the seat base rearwards, raising or lowering the seat base, the seat back will motor forwards whenever it approaches trim panels located behind it. If the seat back is tilted backwards the seat base will move forwards if the seat back approaches trim panels.

1. Adjust the seat and the door rear view mirrors to the desired position.
 - Seat adjustment (Refer to 'Seat Controls', page 3.2).
 - Mirror adjustment (Refer to 'Door Mirrors', page 3.8).

2. Push both the memory button (M) and the desired setting button (1, 2 or 3) simultaneously, then release, to memorize the configuration.

By repeating these steps and pressing an unused button (1, 2 or 3), a second and third driving position can be stored in the memory.



 When making adjustments to a set driving position, reset the new position in the same memory channel. The previous memory is erased when a new driving position is entered.

Recalling a Memorized Position

Once in the seat press and hold button 1, 2 or 3 (depending on which position required) until all movement is stopped. The seat and door mirrors (when adjusting the driver's seat) move to the programmed position. If the button is released all movement will stop, press and hold again to continue movement.

Memory Using the Vehicle Key

When the vehicle is locked using the vehicle key, the driver's seat and both door rear view mirrors will remember their positions. The next time the vehicle is opened using the same vehicle key, the seat and door rear view mirrors will move to the memorized position.

 *The seats and door rear view mirrors only move if the seats and mirrors have been moved, i.e. the spare vehicle key has been used to open or close the vehicle.*

Emergency Stop

If the seat accidentally begins to move, press any seat control button to stop the seat.

Reach and Tilt

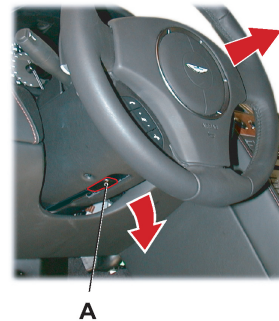
Warnings

- * **Do not adjust steering wheel whilst driving.**
- * **Make sure that the steering column is fully locked in position. The reach and tilt release lever must be fully up, in line with the steering column.**

Reach and tilt are adjusted by using the release lever (A).

Pull the release lever downwards and manoeuvre the steering wheel to the required position.

Hold the steering wheel in the required position and lock it by pulling the release lever up.



Interior Mirrors

Rear View Mirror

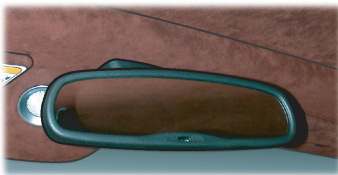
Adjust on its ball mounting until a satisfactory rear view is obtained.

Automatic Dimming

The rear view mirror will dim automatically if the glare from the headlamps of following vehicles becomes too bright.

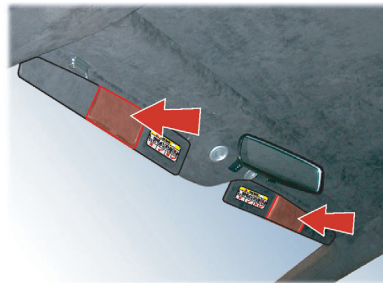
The mirror will return to normal view as unwanted glare reduces to an acceptable level.

If the mirror is dimmed when reverse gear is selected the mirror will revert to normal view.



Vanity Mirror

A vanity mirror is located in each sun visor.



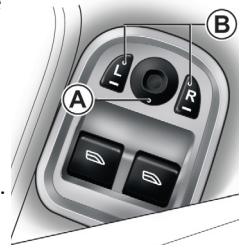
Door Mirrors

 The vehicle key must be at position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control before the door mirrors can be adjusted.

 An amber LED indicates the active mirror.

To adjust the door mirrors select the left or right mirror (B). Then move the joystick (A) up, down, left or right to adjust the selected mirror.

When the heated rear window is activated the heaters in the door mirrors will activate for 6.5 minutes.



Power Fold Door Mirrors

The Power Fold mirror function rotates the door mirror assemblies until folded flat against the doors (folded).

Insert the vehicle key to position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control.

Move the mirrors to the folded position by pressing down and releasing both the left and right mirror select switches (B) together. The mirrors will motor to the folded position. Repeat to motor the mirrors back to the driving position.

Auto Fold

When this vehicle is locked using the vehicle key the mirrors will automatically fold in flat against the doors.

They return to the driving position once the vehicle key has been inserted into the Ignition Control.

Refer to your Aston Martin Dealer to enable or disable this function.

 *If the mirrors have been folded using the 'Power Fold Mirror' function then the mirrors will stay folded until placed in the driving position using the Power Fold Mirror' function again.*

 *Door mirror vibration can occur if the mirrors have been moved manually (folded or unfolded), either intentionally or accidentally. To reset the linkage operate the power fold function once to fold and unfold the mirrors.*

Memory Mirrors

The position of the driver and passenger door mirrors and seats can be memorized and recalled.

Details on memory door mirrors can be found in Memory Seats (Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.5).

Restraints System

The Restraints System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to the front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

A collection of crash sensors provide information to the Restraints Control Module (RCM). During a crash, the RCM may or may not activate the safety belt pre-tensioners or either none, one, or both stages of the dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints based on crash severity and conditions.

The fact that the pretensioners or airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system.

Rather, it means the system determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage, etc.) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices. Frontal airbags are designed to activate only in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollovers, side-impacts, or rear-impacts unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

The system consists of:

- Driver and passengers safety belts with pretensioners and load limiting systems
- Driver and front passenger safety belt usage sensors
- Driver and front passenger dual-stage airbags
- Driver and front passenger side airbags
- Driver and front passenger seat position sensors
- Crash severity sensors
- Restraints Control Module (RCM)
- Restraint system warning symbol 

Dual-Stage Airbags

When activated, the airbags will deploy at either a normal or reduced level of inflation, depending on crash severity. Various sensors determine the direction and severity of an impact. The system analyses this information then deploys the appropriate airbags only.

Seat Position Sensors

Seat position sensors determine the position of the driver and front passenger seats. The information is used to tailor the airbag deployment activation depending upon seat position. The system is designed to help protect smaller drivers sitting close to the driver airbag by providing a lower airbag output level.

Pre-tensioner and Load Limiting Systems

The driver and front passenger seat belts are equipped with pre-tensioner and load limiting systems.

In most moderate frontal or near frontal accidents, the front airbag and pre-tensioner systems will deploy simultaneously.



In some moderate frontal or near frontal accidents, only the pre-tensioner system will deploy.

The pre-tensioners take up slack in the seat belts as the airbags are expanding. The load limiting system releases belt webbing in a controlled manner to reduce belt force on the occupant's chest.

Front Safety Belt Usage Sensors

Safety belt usage sensors detect whether or not the driver and front passenger safety belts are fastened. The information is used to tailor the airbag deployment and safety belt pre-tensioner activation depending upon safety belt usage.

Crash Severity Sensors

Crash severity sensors enhance the ability to detect the severity of an impact. Positioned up front, they provide valuable information early in the crash event on the severity of the impact. This allows the Restraints System to distinguish between different levels of crash severity and modify the deployment strategy of the dual-stage airbags and safety belt pretensioners.

Restraints Control Module

The Restraints Control Module (RCM) monitors its own internal circuits and the circuits for the airbag supplemental restraints, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, safety belt buckle sensors, and seat position sensors.

In addition, the RCM also monitors the restraints warning symbol in the instrument cluster. 

Determining if the System is Operational



The warning symbol in the instrument cluster indicates the condition of the system.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The warning symbol will flash or stay ON
- The warning symbol does not come ON immediately after the ignition is switched ON

If either of these conditions occur, even intermittently, have the restraint system serviced at your Aston Martin Dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

Seat Belts

Aston Martin strongly recommend the use of seat belts.

Warnings

**** Wearing your seat belt is crucial to your safety. Not wearing a seat belt increases chance of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.***

**** Be sure that you and your passengers always fasten their seat belts and use them properly even though airbags are provided.***

**** Reclining the seat back decreases protection provided by the seat belt in the event of a crash. Adjust the seat back to an upright position.***

- * Make sure that the seat back is locked in place. Otherwise it could move forward in the event of a sudden stop or crash and cause injury.*
- * Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, chest and shoulders; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.*
- * Never place shoulder portion of belt under your arm or behind your back.*
- * Always remove from your pockets rigid or breakable objects, i.e. spectacles or a mobile phone, which could be trapped under seat belts, possibly causing injury in the event of an accident.*

- * Expectant mothers should seek medical advice on the most appropriate way to wear the seat belt.*
- * Seat belts must be kept clean so that the retractor works correctly. Make sure that belt webbing is not twisted, looped, frayed or obstructed in any way. If in doubt about condition or operation of seat belt installation, have it checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.*
- * No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent seat belt adjusting devices from operating, or prevent seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack. Never install accessories on your seat belts.*

- * Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.*
- * Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly with battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.*
- * Seat Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.*
- * It is essential to replace the entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the seat belt assembly is not obvious.*

*** No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.**

*** Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupants lap. Do not put an adult seat belt around two children.**

*** When installed, the seat belt webbing must not contact any sharp edges which could abrade or cut the webbing during normal use or in an accident. If necessary, the webbing must be protected.**

This vehicle is installed with four, three point, inertia reel seat belts.

 Items 1, 2 and 3 indicate the three points of the seat belt. Item 3 is also the location of the belt buckle.

The inertia belt reels will automatically tension the belts to provide security with comfort. In the event of a collision or during severe braking, the belt reels will lock.

 A warning symbol in the instrument cluster will come ON for six seconds (approximately) when the ignition is switched ON if the driver's seat belt is not fastened. An audible warning will sound at the same time¹.

¹. Market area dependant



Seat Belt Fastening

 When parked on an incline, the seat belt may lock as it is withdrawn. This is not a fault. If the mechanism locks, release the belt tension and then pull the belt very gently to avoid operation of the inertia lock.

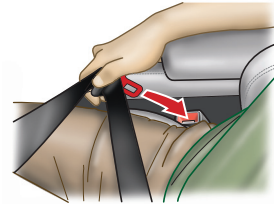
Pull out the seat belt, drawing the tongue over the shoulder and across the chest.



Push the tongue into the belt buckle latch until a positive click is heard.

Pull upwards on the diagonal belt to make sure of a secure latching and to remove all slack from the belt.

Finally, double check that the lap belt is installed snugly, low down across the hips, and that there are no twists.



If it is necessary for an occupant to adjust their seat or seating position during a journey, the belt tension might be disturbed. The occupant should therefore (as soon as it is safe to do so) gently pull down the shoulder run of the seat belt to create some slack and then immediately release it to re-tension the belt for the new seating position.

Seat Belt Unfastening

Depress the button on the buckle. While holding the seat belt tongue allow the belt to slowly retract to its stored position.



Seat Belt Fastening (Child)

Make sure that there is no slack in the webbing and the restraint fits the child snugly across the rib cage and hips. These are the parts of the body most able to take the force of impact.

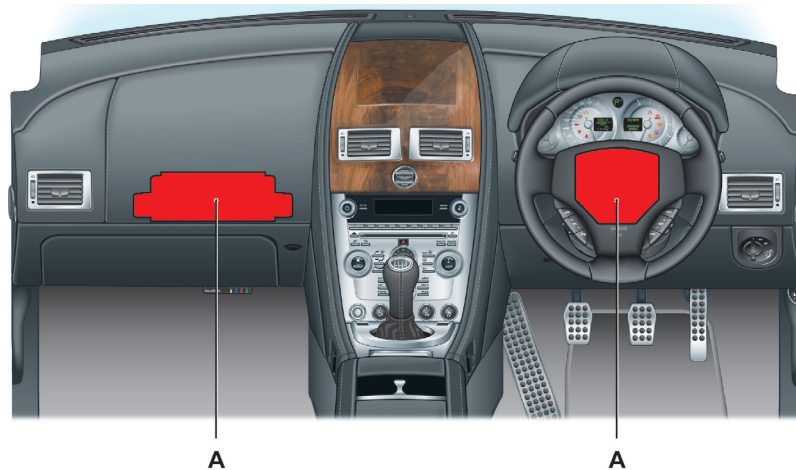
The lap strap should pass across the top of the child's thighs, bearing on the pelvis, not on the abdominal area.

Supplemental Restraints System (SRS)

The vehicle is equipped with driver and front passenger airbags. The airbags and seat belt pre-tensioners are electrically controlled by the Restraints system (Refer to 'Restraints System', page 3.10).

The front airbags (A) only deploy in a serious frontal collision. The side airbags (B (one airbag in each front seat)) only deploy according to which side has been impacted in a serious side collision.

The purpose of the driver and front passenger airbags is to provide **additional** protection for the front seat occupants in the event of a serious impact (frontal or side impacts). The airbags are supplementary to the seat belts.



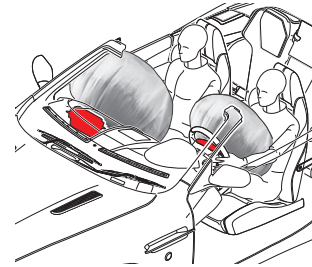
Important airbag safety labels are located on the sun visors and on the end of the instrument panel (passenger side). Make sure that the instructions on these labels are read and complied with prior to driving the vehicle.

Airbag Deployment

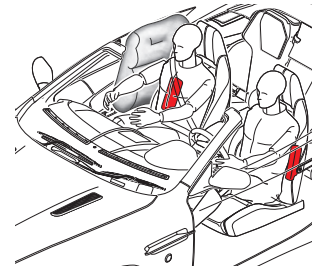
Airbags inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is therefore a risk of death or serious injury such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained by seat belts or are not sitting correctly when the airbags deploy. The risk of injury from a deploying airbag is greatest close to the trim covering the airbag.

The whole sequence of events from sensing the impact to full inflation of the airbag takes place in a fraction of a second.

Front Airbags - on a frontal impact.



Side Airbags - on a side impact (where the impact is on that side only).



⚠ Warnings

- * Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.*
- * All occupants, including the driver, should always wear seat belts, whether or not an airbag is provided, to decrease the risk of injury or death in the event of a crash.*
- * No objects whatsoever should be attached to the centre cover of the steering wheel or the passenger fascia panel. Such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a collision severe enough to cause the airbags to deploy.*

Do not change, modify or tamper with the steering wheel, passenger side fascia or any other part of the airbag system. Such actions could disable the system or cause inadvertent airbag deployment.

The system will not deploy in the event of minor frontal or side impacts, such as contacts when parking. The airbag system is not designed to protect against rear impacts.

The noise and gas associated with the deployment of the airbags is not injurious to health.

Any work on the airbag system must only be carried out by an Aston Martin Dealer.

Child Seats and Passenger Airbags

Warning

**** Extreme Hazard: Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it.***

Aston Martin strongly recommend not to install any child seat on the front passenger seat of this vehicle.

In the event of a serious frontal or side collision the vehicle airbag system is designed to deploy, to provide **additional** protection for the front seat occupants.

If a forward facing child seat is to be used in the front passenger seat, follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to secure the child seat and **move the passenger seat to its rearmost and lowest position.**

Advanced Restraints System

The Advanced Restraints System provides the following, in addition to the Restraints System.

Front Passenger Sensing

Front passenger sensing is designed to meet the regulatory requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS)208 and is designed to disable the front passenger's front airbag under certain conditions.

The system works with sensors which are installed in the front passenger's seat. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger's front airbag should be enabled or disabled.

 If it is necessary to modify the Advanced Restraints system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your Aston Martin Dealer at the phone number shown in the Dealer Directory of this Owner's Guide.

Front passenger sensing will **disable** the front passenger's front airbag if:

- The front passenger seat is unoccupied
- A child is present or a child is present in a child seat which is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions
- A front passenger takes their weight off of the seat for a period of time

If the front passenger seat is occupied and the sensing system has turned the passenger's front airbag OFF, the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol will come ON and stay ON to show that the front passenger front airbag is inactive.



Front passenger sensing will **enable** the front passenger's front airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

Passenger Seat	Airbag	PASS AIRBAG OFF Symbol
Empty	Not Active	OFF
Child + Child seat	Not Active	ON
Adult	Active	OFF

 In some cases a small child placed in a child seat will not activate the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol. If this occurs the passenger airbag status will be as described above for an empty seat, i.e. passenger seat airbag 'Not Active' but the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol will not come ON.

 The passenger sensing system may detect small or medium objects placed on the seat base. For most objects which are on the passenger seat, the passenger front airbag will be disabled. Even though the passenger airbag is disabled, the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol may or may not come ON according to the table above.

 The PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol will come ON for a short period when the ignition is switched ON to confirm it is functional.

Seating Position

Warnings

** Even with the Advanced Restraints System, children aged 12 and under should be properly restrained in the back seat.*

** Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor. Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat base and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash.*

** Improper installation of a child seat may cause the Passenger Sensing system to leave the front airbag active. Always make sure that child seats are correctly installed on the seat. Read the child seat manufacture's installation instructions.*

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it's very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or side ways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat and the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol is ON, it is possible that the person isn't sitting properly in the seat.

If this happens:

1. Switch the ignition OFF. Ask the person to place the seat back in the full upright position.
2. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centred on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
3. Start the vehicle and have the person stay in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's front airbag.
4. If the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol stays ON even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

 Warnings

**** Do not stow objects in seat back document pocket, the seat base front pocket or hang objects off seat back if a child is in the front passenger seat.***

**** Do not place objects underneath the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console.***

**** Check the PASS AIRBAG OFF indicator symbol for proper airbag status.***

**** Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system.***

If you think that the status of the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects
 - Lodged underneath the seat
 - Between the seat cushion and the center console
 - Hanging off the seat back
 - Stowed in the seat back document pocket
 - Placed on the occupant's lap
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat

These conditions may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described.

If the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol is ON, do the following:

The driver and adult passengers should check for any objects that may be lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.

If objects are lodged or cargo is interfering with the seat take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

1. Switch the ignition OFF.
2. Check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
3. Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
4. Start the vehicle.
5. Wait at least two minutes and verify that the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol is no longer ON.

If the PASS AIRBAG OFF symbol stays ON, this may or may not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take the vehicle immediately to the nearest Aston Martin Dealer.

 Warning

** Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system.*

Determining if the System is Operational

The warning symbol in the instrument cluster indicates the condition of the system.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The warning symbol will either flash or stay ON
- The warning symbol will not come ON immediately after the ignition is switched ON

If either of these conditions occur, even intermittently, have the restraint system serviced at your Aston Martin Dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

Child Safety

A child, regardless of age, should always be restrained when travelling in a vehicle.

Warnings

** Do not allow children to travel in a vehicle without restraint. An appropriate child seat or harness should always be used.*

** Each seat belt assembly must be used by only one occupant. It is dangerous to put a seat belt around a child being carried on the occupants lap.*

** Accident statistics show that children are generally safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat. A suitable child restraint, properly installed and used, provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.*

 Make sure that an installed child seat does not rest against the door, that the child sits properly in the seat and does not lean close to, or against, the door or window.

Child Seats and Passenger Airbags

Warning

** Extreme Hazard. Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it.*

Aston Martin strongly recommends not to install any child seat on the front passenger seat of this vehicle.

In the event of a serious frontal or side collision the vehicle airbag system is designed to deploy, to provide **additional** protection for the front seat occupants.

If a forward facing child seat is to be used in the front passenger seat, follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to secure the child seat and **move the passenger seat to its rearmost and lowest position.**

Child Seats

Warnings

** Do not seat a child aged 12 or younger, or weighing 79.4 lb (36 kg) or less in the vehicle without an appropriate child seat or booster cushion. Please confirm that any child seat or booster cushion you may fit in the vehicle has been designed for use in this model, and that it conforms to local market requirements.*

** Aston Martin has not tested any child restraint systems for this vehicle, and does not recommend any specific child restraint system.*

** The front passenger airbag must be deactivated when using a child seat in the front passenger seat. Always check the status of the front passenger airbag (Refer to 'Front Passenger Sensing', page 3.18).*

Use of Child Safety Seats

Child safety seats must be in conformity with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213. Look for the statement on the box and seat.

Look for the following when selecting a child restraint system:

- It should have a label certifying that it meets the applicable Motor Vehicle Safety Standards
- Carefully read the instructions supplied with the restraint. Be sure you understand them and can install and use the device properly and safely in the vehicle

- Make sure that the child restraint system is appropriate for the child's weight and development. The label required by the standard or regulations, or instructions for infant restraints, usually provide this information
- An infant or child that is not properly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash. Seat belts are designed for adults and larger children; infants and smaller children must be restrained in an approved child safety seat.
- Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle.

If you choose to use a child safety seat, follow the manufacturers instructions. Never hold a baby or child on your lap while riding in the vehicle.

Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR)

This vehicle has Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) seat belts installed to the front passenger seat and the rear seats.

This system is designed to securely hold child seats. The ALR system temporarily locks the seat belt that is securing a child seat.

Warning

**** Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Not following the child-seat manufacturer's instructions when installing the child seat is dangerous.***

ALR Operation

Gently pull out the relevant inertia reel seat belt until fully extended. The ALR system will only engage at the maximum extension point of the seat belt.

Thread the belt tongue through the child seat as instructed by the child seat manufacturer. Engage the tongue into the belt buckle.

Adjust the tongue position on the belt if necessary to make sure that the lower belt run is tight and then allow the upper run of the seat belt to fully retract until the child seat is securely held. The ALR system will be heard 'clicking' as the seat belt retracts. When fully retracted, pull down on the upper run of the belt to check that the ALR lock has engaged.

To remove the child seat, release the belt as normal and allow it to retract through the seat frame.

 *When parked on an incline, the belt may lock as it is withdrawn. This is not a fault. If the mechanism locks, release the belt tension and then pull the belt very gently to avoid operation of the inertia lock.*

The ALR system will disengage when the belt is fully retracted. The belt may then be worn when required as a normal inertia reel belt. Once the ALR is disengaged, the belt must be fully extended to re-engage the system on the next occasion that a child seat is installed.

Tether Anchorages

A tether is a strap that connects the top of a child seat to a tether anchor point on the vehicle to reduce excessive movement of the child seat in the event of a collision.

The purpose of a tether strap is to provide **additional** protection for the child seat occupant in the event of a serious impact. The tether strap is supplementary to the seat belts. Your vehicle has a tether anchor point for each passenger seat.

Warnings

** Child seat anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by a correctly installed child seat. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.*

** An infant or child that is not properly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash. Seat belts are designed for adults and larger children; infants and smaller children must be restrained in an approved child safety seat.*

** Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Not following the child seat manufacturer's instructions when installing the child seat is dangerous.*

Correct Assembly of Tether Anchorages

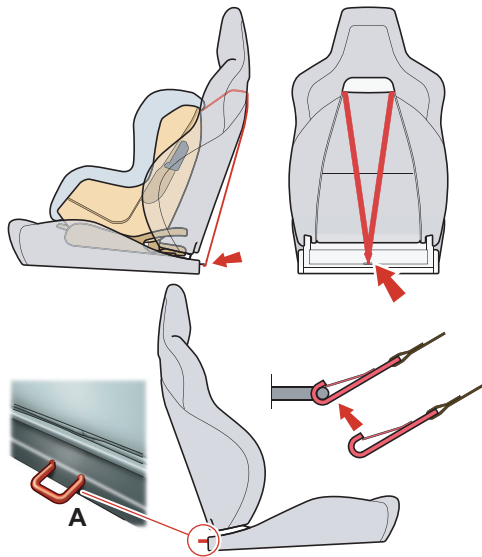
Front Passenger Seat

A tether anchor point is located at the base, rear of the front passenger seat (A).

Move the seat forward to access the tether anchor point. Route the tether strap through the aperture in the seat back as shown.

Engage the tether clip to the anchor point at the bottom of the passenger seat back (A) and make sure that the locking spring has fully closed to prevent accidental disengagement.

Always make sure that the tether strap length is adjusted to remove any slack.



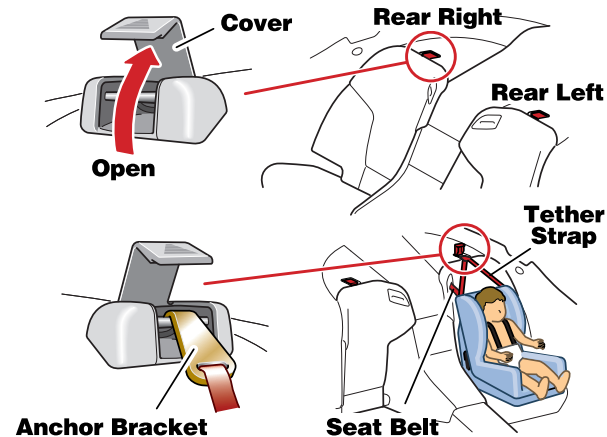
Rear Passenger Seats

(2+2 Seating Only)

Tether anchor points are located behind the top of the rear seats.

Engage the attachment clip in the orientation shown and make sure that the locking spring has fully closed to prevent accidental disengagement of the tether strap.

Always make sure that the tether strap length is adjusted to remove any slack.



Before Driving

DB 9

Deployable Rollbars (Volante)

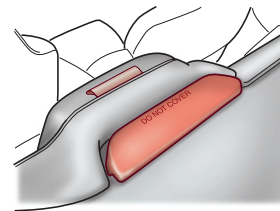
Warnings

- * Do not place any objects on the top of the deployable rollbar covers behind the rear seat backs.*
- * Do not allow any person to sit on the deployable rollbar covers at any time.*
- * Do not attempt to service or modify the deployable rollbar system.*
- * Do not attempt to reset the deployable rollbar system if it deploys.*
- * If the Roof is closed and the deployable rollbars deploy they will break through the rear glass.*

The deployable rollbar system comprises an electronic roll sensor unit integrated into the main crash sensor and two 'U' shaped roll bars, concealed behind the rear seat (Refer to 'Deployable Rollbars', page 6.9).

If the deployable rollbar system has been deployed, proceed to your nearest Aston Martin Dealer to check for any damage and to reset the system.

Warning Labels



The following warning labels are located on the deployable rollbar system.

- 1** 'Rollbar'
- 2** 'Do Not Cover'

Interior Storage

Glovebox

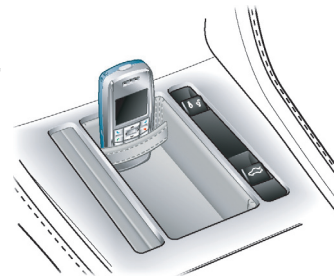
Press the Glovebox button (A) to open. Push up to close.

 *Vehicle Guidebook storage location.*



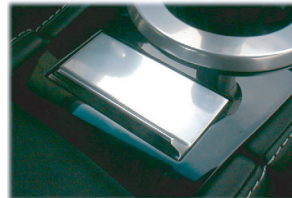
Trinket tray, including mobile phone pocket, coin or credit card holder

(Automatic transmission only).



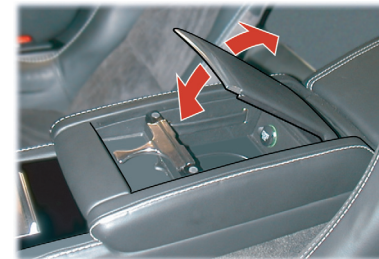
Trinket box

(Non smoking option).
Lift the lid to open.



Armrest cubby box

Including iPod, USB ports, an auxiliary socket and an accessory socket.



Cup holder

A Cup holder is provided in the Armrest Cubby box. The holder rotates through 180°.

Warnings

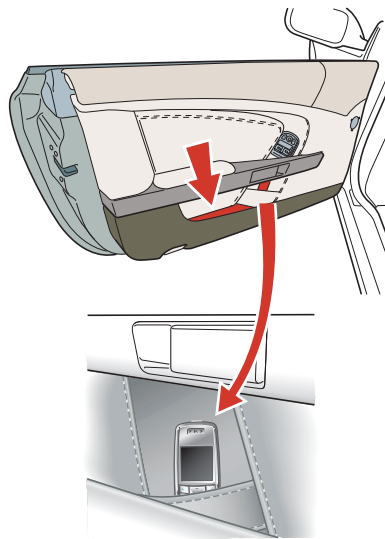
** Only use the cup holder when safe to do so.*

** Do not place hot drinks in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. There is a risk of scalding.*

** Use soft cups only. Hard cups and objects can cause personal injury in a collision.*



Door pockets,
including mobile
phone pocket



Seat Pockets

! *Do not place items in the seat pockets if using a child restraint on the same seat (Refer to 'Advanced Restraints System', page 3.18).*

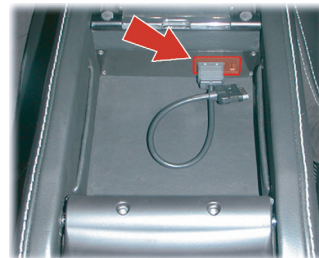


Media Devices

A dedicated Apple iPod¹ player port is provided in the armrest cubby box, along with a USB port for the connection of USB storage devices and an auxiliary socket for other media devices.

 *iPod batteries and USB devices which require a power source are charged while connected.*

After connecting the Apple iPod or other music device it can then be operated via the vehicle audio system (Refer to 'iPod and USB Connection', page 8.29).



¹ iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Accessory Sockets

Music devices connected using the Auxiliary socket will not be operated by the vehicle audio system (Refer to 'Auxiliary Functions', page 8.32) or have their batteries charged.

 A music device, connected by the auxiliary socket, can be powered using the accessory socket mounted in the armrest cubby box.

Warnings

*** Damage to electrical circuits will result if more than 10 amps is drawn from the accessory socket.**

Only connect accessories which are designed for use in a motor vehicle.

*** Prolonged use of accessory socket when vehicle is stationary may seriously discharge battery.**

Accessory sockets are mounted in the armrest cubby box and trunk right sidewall (A) and may be used to power any 12 volt vehicle accessory requiring a current of less than 10 amps. The trunk mounted accessory socket is a constant live.



 On vehicles installed with the non-smoking option a second accessory socket is provided in the trinket box.

Read the manufacturer's instructions and make sure that you do not connect any device which would exceed current rating of the accessory socket.



Ashtray and Cigar Lighter (Option)

The cigar lighter may be used when the vehicle key is in position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control.

Push down until it clicks. The lighter will pop up when ready for use.



Remove the ashtray by opening the lid and pulling the glass tray upwards. Install the tray by placing it into position and push down.



Warning

** The cigar lighter is heated to 'Red Heat' when in use. Take care to avoid burns. Do not allow children to play with the cigar lighter.*

Electric Windows

Warning

** Misuse of the window switches, especially by children, can result in injury due to entrapment in the window closure. Drivers must advise all occupants of the possible danger and make sure that all obstructions are clear before raising the window.*

To raise and lower the windows the vehicle key must be at position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control.



Volante Only. Due to wind pressure when traveling at very high speeds the door windows may not close correctly.



The windows can be operated up to one minute after the vehicle key is removed from the Ignition Control.

Lower - Lightly press and release the window switch (A) to lower the window in stages. Press firmly and release to lower the window with one touch.

Raise - Pull back and hold to raise the window in one movement. Pull back and release the window switch (A) to raise the window in stages.

If power to the electric windows has been interrupted for any reason, they will fail to operate correctly until reset (Refer to 'Headlamp Alignment', page 11.49).



Door Sealing

Warning

*** Make sure that all occupants are clear when the window mechanism is operating.**

To minimize wind noise and make sure of a watertight window seal a door sealing system is used to be sure of a tight fit of the door glass to the seals around the top of the door opening.

When a door is opened, the window glass automatically lowers a few millimeters to clear the door seal. As the door is closed, the window glass automatically, after a pause, raises against the body frame rubber seals.

Reading Lamps

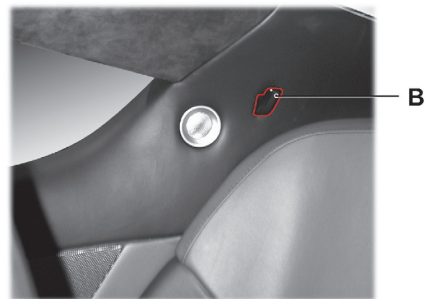
Both reading lamps are controlled by the individual switches mounted on the Center Stack (A).

Unless switched OFF and ON at 'A' they will continue to operate up to four minutes after the ignition is switched OFF.



Coat Hooks

Coat hooks (B) are provided in the rear environment (one each side).



Umbrella

An umbrella (C), complete with holder, is provided in the rear of the trunk.

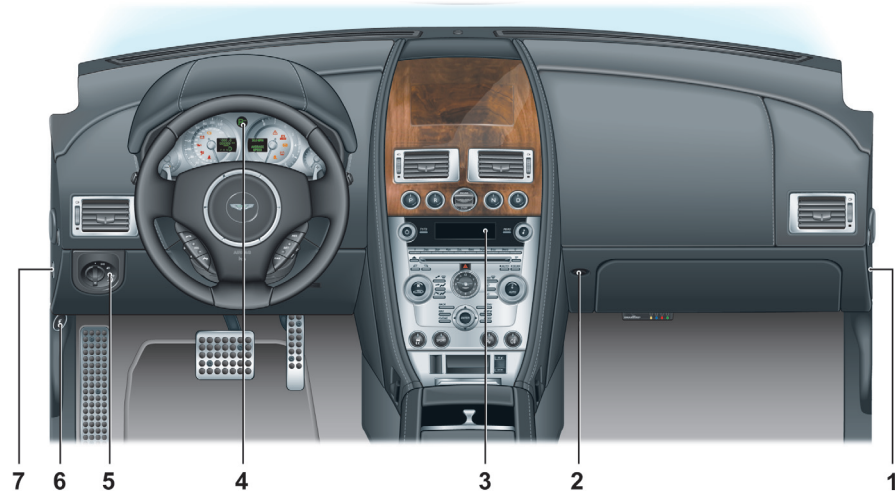


ASTON MARTIN

Controls

Contents

Overview	4.2	Filler Flap Emergency Release.....	4.19
Instrument Cluster.....	4.4	Vehicle Horn.....	4.19
Information and Warning Symbols	4.6	Trip Computer	4.20
Centre Stack	4.10	Cruise Control.....	4.22
Ignition Control.....	4.13	Ambient Temperature	4.24
Stalk Controls.....	4.16	Tire Pressure Monitoring	4.24
Master Lamp Switch.....	4.17		



- 1 REDUCED GUARD** - The reduced guard button disables the deadlock system and allows for passengers or animals to be left in the vehicle without activating the security system.



With the vehicle key in position '0' or '1' or within 60 seconds of removing the vehicle key reduced guard can be activated. Press the button, the button LED will show red when reduced guard is active (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.12).

- 2 FUEL FLAP RELEASE** - Press to open the fuel flap. Close the fuel flap by pressing down on the flap until the lock engages.

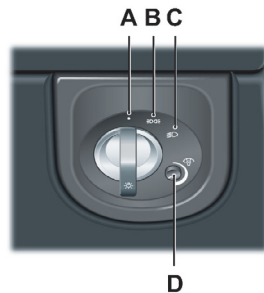
Filler Flap Emergency Release - (Refer to page 4.19)



- 3 MASTER LAMP SWITCH** -

A - All external lamps OFF.

B - Side lamps, side marker lamps, rear lamps and licence plate lamps ON.



C - Headlamps ON, in addition to the side, side marker, rear and licence plate lamps.

D - The level of instrument illumination can be adjusted using the rotary control. Clockwise rotation increases the brightness of the illumination.

Push the rotary control in and release to enable the control. Push in and release to lock the control.

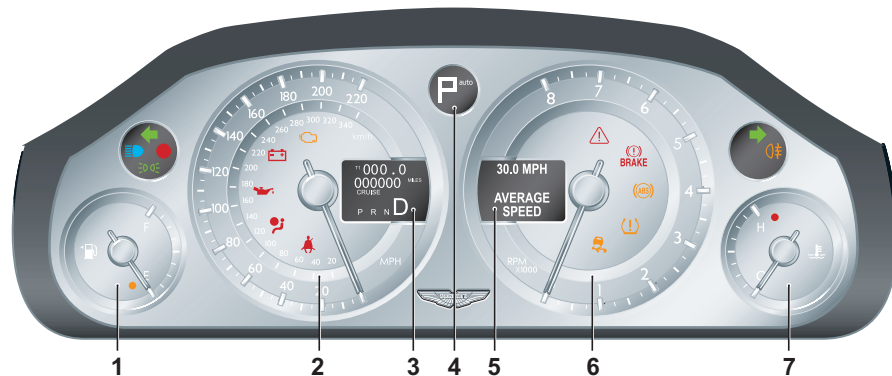
- 4 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER** - (Refer to page 4.4).

- 5 CENTRE STACK** - (Refer to page 4.10).

- 6 GLOVEBOX SWITCH** - Press to open the glovebox. Push the glovebox lid up to close.



ASTON MARTIN



- 1 **FUEL GAUGE** - Indicates how much fuel is in the fuel tank. Refuel as soon as possible when the low fuel symbol comes ON.-
- 2 **SPEEDOMETER** - Indicates vehicle road speed.

3 **MESSAGE CENTRE (LEFT)** - Displays the following:

Trip Meter - The Trip Meter shows distances travelled since last reset of trip meters T1 and T2 (B). Toggle between T1 and T2 by pressing **T1/T2** (A) for less than three seconds. Press **T1/T2** for more than three seconds to reset the trip meter on display.

Sport Mode Status (Auto Only) - Shows 'Sport' (C) when sport mode is activated.

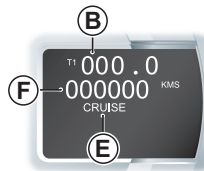


3 Gear Range (Auto Only) - Indicates the transmission position and current gear selection (D). Possible transmission positions and gear selection are in bold. Items not in bold are not selectable.

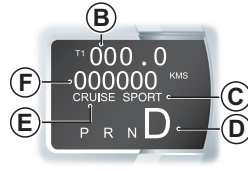
Cruise Status - Shows 'Cruise' (E) when cruise control is activated (Refer to 'Cruise Control', page 4.22).

Odometer - Shows the total distance covered by the vehicle (F).

Manual



Automatic



4 AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION -

GEAR POSITION INDICATOR DISPLAY (GPID) -

Indicates the current transmission position when in **Auto Drive** mode and the current gear selection when in **Touchtronic** mode (Refer to 'Auto Drive Mode', page 5.4).



MANUAL TRANSMISSION -

GEAR SELECTION INDICATOR DISPLAY (GSID) -

Indicates the optimum time to shift gear. A red 'R' will show when the transmission is in reverse (Refer to 'Manual Transmission', page 5.10).



5 MESSAGE CENTRE (RIGHT) - Displays the following:

Driver Information and Warnings Messages appear if an unsatisfactory condition is detected. Message priority is indicated by a red or amber triangle above the message centre.

- **Red** Potential personal danger or danger of damage to the vehicle
- **Amber** Advisory, indicate possible degraded vehicle performance

Warning messages will be displayed when the ignition is ON and will cycle automatically.

- 5 View or acknowledge messages at any time by pressing the **Read** button (G).

Service Intervals

'Time for Regular Service' will be displayed when a regular vehicle service is due. This message will show at ignition ON for two minutes. It will continue display at ignition ON until the regular service has taken place.

Trip Computer

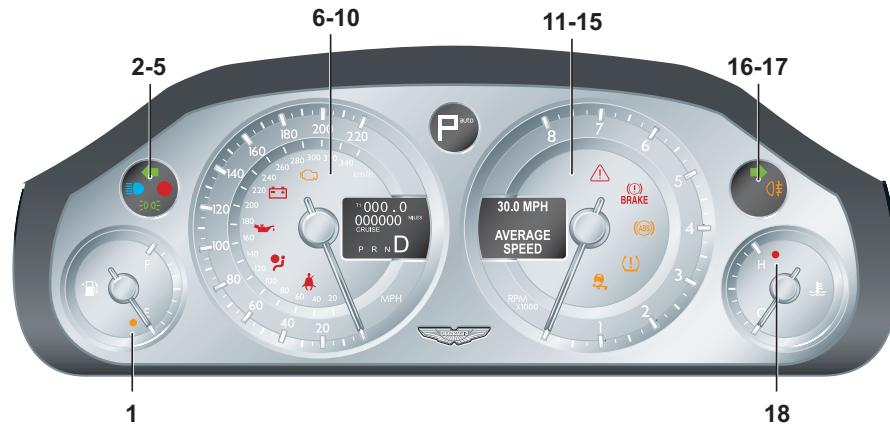
The message centre (right) defaults to the trip computer when there are no messages to show (Refer to 'Ambient Temperature', page 4.24).



- 6 **TACHOMETER** - Indicates engine speed in revolutions per minute x 1000.
- 7 **ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE** - Shows the temperature of the engine coolant.

Information and Warning Symbols

- 1  **LOW FUEL WARNING** - Comes ON when only approximately 2.0 Galls (9 ltr) is available. At 2 Galls (9 ltr) and 1 Galls (5 ltr) an audible 'beep' will sound and the 'estimated distance' message will show (for 20 seconds) in the message centre (right).
- 2  **LEFT TURN DIRECTION INDICATORS** - Flashes with the indicator lamps or hazard warning lamps (Ignition ON).
- 3  **HEADLAMPS** - Indicates the main beam of the headlamps is in use.
- 4  **SIDE LAMPS** - Indicates that the side lamps, dip or main beams are ON.



- 5**  **PATS** - If this symbol flashes continuously at ignition ON the vehicle will stay immobilized. If the symbol is ON continuously at ignition ON the vehicle will start but PATS has gone into 'Fail Safe' mode (Refer to 'Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS)', page 2.12).

 Warning

** Stop immediately if the Check Engine symbol flashes, do not drive the vehicle. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.*

- 6**  **CHECK ENGINE** - Steady amber indicates a fault in the engine management system. Continue driving only if there are no audible, visible or physical indications of degraded engine performance. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible.
- Flashing amber indicates a major fault in the engine management system. Stop immediately. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

- 7  **IGNITION WARNING** - Comes ON when the ignition is ON and goes OFF when the engine is started and battery charging commences. Also comes ON if battery charging fails whilst driving.
- 8  **OIL PRESSURE WARNING** - Comes ON when the engine oil pressure falls below minimum. Do not continue driving if this symbol stays ON. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

-  **Warning**
** Do not drive the vehicle if the SRS warning symbol stays ON. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.*
- 9  **SUPPLEMENTARY RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)** - At vehicle key position 'I' and 'II' or on vehicle start up, this symbol comes ON for a few seconds as a readiness indicator. If it does not come ON, or if it does not go OFF after a few seconds, or if it comes ON whilst driving, the airbag self-diagnostic system has detected a fault.

-  **Warning**
** Do not drive the vehicle if the seat belt warning symbol stays ON. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.*
- 10  **SEAT BELT WARNING** - This warning symbol will come ON and a chime will sound for six seconds if the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition is switched ON.
- 11  **WARNING TRIANGLE** - Indicates Red or Amber depending on warning or information message priority.

 Warning

** If the Brake Warning symbol stays ON, after fully releasing the parking brake, do not drive the vehicle. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.*

- 12**  **BRAKE WARNING** - At ignition ON this symbol will come ON when the parking brake is applied. It will go OFF when the parking brake is fully released. If the symbol stays ON, after fully releasing the parking brake, it indicates that either the brake fluid level is low or that the brake pads require regular maintenance (Refer to 'Footbrake', page 5.11).

 Warning

** If the ABS Warning symbol stays ON, do not drive the vehicle. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.*

- 13**  **ABS WARNING** - Indicates a concern in the ABS control circuits. Continue driving only if there are no audible, visible or physical indications of degraded brake performance. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible if this symbol stays ON.
- 14**  **TIRE PRESSURE** - During vehicle start up, this symbol will come ON, briefly, as a readiness indicator. It will come ON again if tire pressure falls below specification (Refer to 'Tire Pressure Monitoring', page 4.24).

- 15**  **DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL** - At ignition ON or on vehicle start up, this symbol will come ON, as a readiness indicator. If, while DSC is active, the DSC symbol stays ON or it comes ON whilst driving, the DSC system has detected a fault. A DSC fault message will be displayed in the message centre (right). Consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible. (Refer to 'Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)', page 5.14).
- 16**  **RIGHT TURN DIRECTION INDICATORS** - Flashes with the indicator lamps or hazard warning lamps (Ignition ON).
- 17**  **REAR FOG** - Indicates if the rear fog lamps are ON.
- 18**  **HIGH COOLANT TEMP** - Indicates when engine coolant temperature exceeds 248°F (120°C).

Low Outside Temperature

Warning

** Even if the 'Ice Warning' message does not show, there is no guarantee that at low temperatures the road is free from ice.*

At temperatures below 39°F (4°C) the message 'Ice Warning' is displayed in the message centre (right), this indicates to the driver that frost or ice is likely to form on road surfaces.

The amber warning triangle  will also come ON. The the message and warning triangle will continue to show until the outside temperature rises to a safer level.

Warning Symbol Indications

As the ignition is switched ON, the electronic control units complete a self check to make sure of correct operation.

During these checks the following information and warning symbols will come ON for five seconds and 'System Check' will appear on the message centre (right).



Under normal circumstances most warning symbols will go OFF at the end of the individual system check if system checks are satisfactory.

Centre Stack

- 1 **SATELLITE NAVIGATION SCREEN** - Opens when the Satellite Navigation system is ON (Refer to 'Satellite Navigation', page 10.1).
- 2 **IGNITION CONTROL** - Insert the vehicle key for ignition positions '0', 'I', 'II' and engine start (Refer to 'Ignition Control', page 4.13).
- 3 **AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION CONTROLS** - Park, Reverse, Neutral and Drive controls (Refer to 'Automatic Transmission', page 5.4).

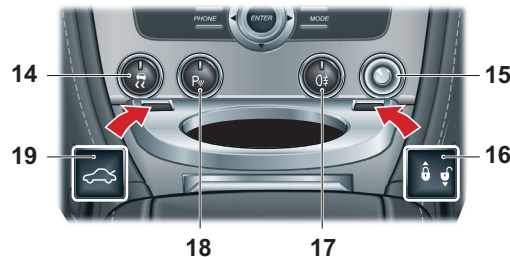


- 4 **DISPLAY** - Presents options, menus and information.
- 5 **CLOCK** - To set the time press **MENU**. Go to <Car settings...> (Enter) <Clock>.
- 6 **READ** - Press to view and acknowledge messages.
- 7 **AUDIO CONTROLS** - (Refer to 'Audio', page 8.1).
- 8 **CLIMATE CONTROL** - (Refer to 'Climate Control', page 7.1).
- 9 **MODE AND MENU NAVIGATION** - Select functions and move back in the menus. Use the joystick to navigate for menus, music tracks, radio stations. Press to accept.
- 10 **READ LAMPS** - Driver and passenger reading lamps.
- 11 **HAZARD WARNING LAMPS** - Press to activate the hazard warning lamps. Press again to deactivate.
- 12 **T1/T2** - Select between two trip meters (Refer to 'Trip Computer', page 4.20)



- 13 PASSENGER AIRBAG INDICATION** - Indicates the passenger airbag status (Refer to 'Passenger Airbag Deactivation', page 3.21).
- 14 DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL** - The DSC system is always ON when the ignition is ON. Press and hold for approximately four seconds to switch OFF. Press and release to switch ON (Refer to 'Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)', page 5.14).
- 15 LAMY PEN HOLDER** - Pull the pen from its holder. Gently push back into its holder.
- 16 MASTER VEHICLE LOCK** - Press to lock both doors and disable the trunk lid lock switch. Pull up to unlock. (Refer to 'Master Lock Switch', page 2.7).

Manual Transmission



- 17 REAR FOG LAMPS** - Used in conjunction with the dipped beam when fog or mist is causing restricted visibility. They **must** be switched OFF when visibility clears to reduce glare to the drivers of following vehicles.

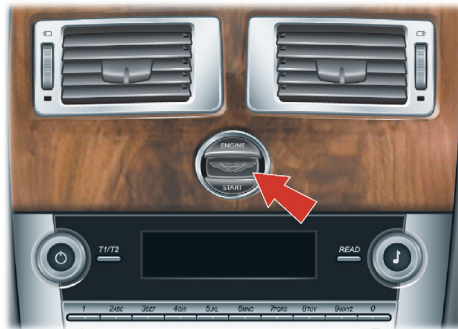
- 18 PARKING ASSIST** - Defaults to active at each ignition cycle. Press and release to activate and de-activate parking assist. (Refer to 'Rear Parking Assist', page 5.18). (Refer to 'Front and Rear Parking Assist (Option)', page 5.19).
- 19 TRUNK OPEN** - Pull up to open the trunk. On Volante models this switch becomes the Roof open and close switch (Refer to 'Convertible Roof (Volante)', page 6.1).
- 20 SPORT MODE** - Press the Sport button once to enter sport mode and press again to exit sport mode (Refer to 'Driving', page 5.1).

Automatic Transmission¹



Ignition Control

To access vehicle functions and to start the engine, the vehicle key must be inserted in to the Ignition Control.



⚠ Warning

*** Only use the vehicle key in the Ignition Control. Do not place any objects, including fingers, into the Ignition Control other than the vehicle key. Objects other than the vehicle key may cause the Ignition Control unit to fail.**

⚠ The vehicle key must only be inserted into the Ignition Control with the two indents first, as shown. Attempting to insert the larger end first the key may damage the Ignition Control.



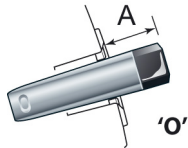
¹. Items 10, 12, 20 and 21 are mirrored on left hand drive vehicles

Position '0' (Ignition OFF)

Auxiliaries OFF (Audio, Satellite Navigation, Hands-Free phone not available), steering lock engaged. Seats can be adjusted.

Gently insert the vehicle key, indents first, into the Ignition Control. Press in until the key clicks into place (approximately 0.75 in (20 mm) A) then release. The key is docked at this point.

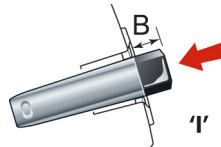
Remove by pulling the vehicle key from the Ignition Control.

**Position 'I' (Ignition OFF and Accessories ON)**

Auxiliaries ON (Audio, Satellite Navigation, Hands-Free phone available), steering lock engaged.

- If already in position '0' gently press the key until the infotainment centre and the instrument cluster lights come ON (a further 0.5 in (10 mm) (B)) and release for position 'I'
- Or insert the key into the Ignition Control and move straight to position 'I'. Press in until the infotainment centre and the instrument cluster lights come ON

Remove by pulling the vehicle key from the Ignition Control.

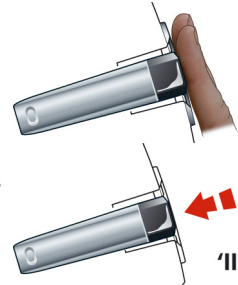
**Position 'II' (Ignition ON)**

Ignition and all other electrical systems ON, steering lock OFF.

! Do not depress the brake (automatic) clutch (manual) pedal unless intending to start the engine (Refer to 'Starting the Engine', page 5.2).

 Insert the key to position 'II' by using the flat of a finger, as shown.

- If the key is already in position '0' or 'I' gently press the key until it is flush with the Ignition Control bezel and release.



- Or insert the key into the Ignition Control and move straight to position 'II'. Gently press the key until it is flush with the Ignition Control bezel and release.

 *To start the engine from this position fully press the brake (automatic) clutch (manual) pedal down and press the key fully in.*

 *If the vehicle key is pressed **fully** into the Ignition Control and released for position 'II', the key must be returned to position 'I' to start the engine.*

The Instrument cluster symbols will come ON, the vehicle systems will wake up and the steering lock will release.

Remove the vehicle key from position 'II' by pressing the key fully in **twice**, without depressing the brake (automatic) clutch (manual) pedal, and release. The key will gently return to position 'I'. Pull the key from the Ignition Control. Once in position 'I' after 10 seconds the steering lock will engage.

Starting the Engine

(Refer to 'Starting the Engine', page 5.2).

Preventing Unnecessary Battery Drain

If the vehicle key is left in the Ignition Control (position '0'), some vehicle circuits will stay active and unnecessary current will be drawn from the battery.

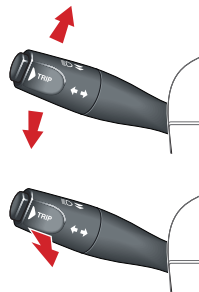
A temporary label is installed on all new vehicles to remind drivers to remove the vehicle key whenever the ignition is switched OFF (Refer to 'Vehicle Battery Charge', page 11.34).



Left Side Stalk

Turn Signals - Up indicates a right turn. Down indicates a left turn. Hold against spring pressure to indicate a lane change. Returns to the centre position on completion of a manoeuvre.

Main and Dipped Beam Switching - Pull forwards and latch for main beam. Pull forwards again and latch to return to dipped beam. Pull forwards and release without latching, at any time while the vehicle key is in the Ignition Control, to flash main beam ON and OFF.



Pull forwards and release without latching, when the vehicle key is removed, to activate Homesafe (Refer to 'Homesafe', page 2.11).

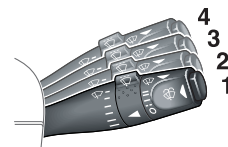
Trip Computer - Repeated pressing of the trip function button (A) cycles through the trip computer displays. (Refer to 'Trip Computer', page 4.20).



Right Side Stalk

Windshield Wiper Control -

- 1 OFF.
- 2 Intermittent Wipe.
- 3 Normal Speed Wipe.
- 4 Fast Wipe.



Demand Wipe - Pull the stalk forwards.

 The windshield wipers will return to their park position if the ignition is switched OFF or the hood is unlatched, regardless of the right stalk position.

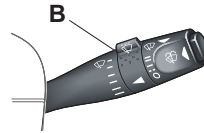
Speed Sensitive Wipe - If the wipers are at fast wipe, when the vehicle slows down (below 7 mph (11 km/h)) the wipers will go to normal wipe speed.

If the wipers are at normal speed when the vehicle slows down (below 7 mph (11 km/h)) the wipers will go to intermittent wipe (position 2).

As soon as the vehicle speeds up (above 9.5 mph (15 km/h)) the wipers will return to their original setting.

Windshield Wiper Delay Control -

Intermittent wipe time delay increases or decreases in six steps (B). Sixth position gives the shortest delay between wipes.



Windshield Washer Control - Press the button (C) for more than one second to activate the windshield washers. Operation continues until the button is released. When released the washers stop immediately but the wipers continue for a few strokes, ending with a pause and then a final wipe.

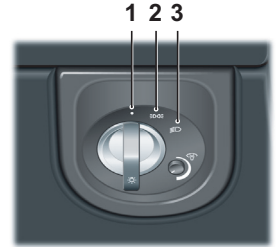


If used during normal wiper operation, the wipers operate continually irrespective of the washer operation.

Headlamp Washers - Headlamp washers will operate automatically, once per journey (each ignition cycle), if the windshield washers are operated and the headlamps are ON.

Master Lamp Switch

! If Homesafe (Refer to 'Homesafe', page 2.11) has been activated with the master lamp switch at position three (headlamps ON), the main beam will stay ON. Make sure the master lamp switch is at position 1 before exiting.



- 1 All external lamps OFF.
- 2 Side lamps, side marker lamps, rear lamps and licence plate lamps ON.
- 3 With the vehicle key at position 'II' in the Ignition Control, Headlamps ON, in addition to the side, side marker, rear and licence plate lamps.

Lamps ON Warning

If the vehicle side lamps are ON, and the drivers door is opened after the vehicle key has been removed from the Ignition Control, an audible warning will sound for a period of five minutes. To stop the audible warning switch the lamps OFF. The audible warning will also stop when the driver's door is shut - the lamps will stay ON.

Day Time Running Lamps

(Canada only)

The dipped beams and side lamps are permanently ON.

Headlamp Levelling

The weight of items placed in the trunk and passengers may change the beam angle of the headlamps. The headlamps are continuously monitored and automatically adjusted to compensate.

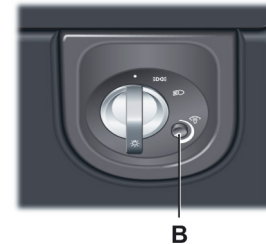
Instrument Brightness

During the daylight hours the level of instrument brightness defaults to maximum brightness and is not adjustable. During the twilight and night time hours a Twilight sensor (A (located in the Centre Stack)) automatically reduces the level of brightness to a preset level.



 If the Twilight sensor is covered the level of brightness will stay low as if in night time mode.

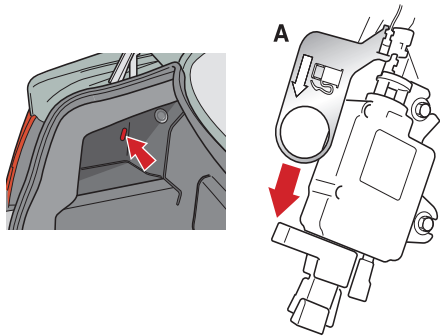
The level of brightness can be further reduced by using the rotary control (B). If the brightness level has been adjusted, the twilight and night time brightness level will return to the previous setting on the rotary control, each time the sensor picks up the twilight hours.



Push the rotary control in and release to enable the control. Push in and release to lock the control.

Filler Flap Emergency Release

If the filler flap will not open when the release button is pressed, open the filler flap manually. Reach through the left trunk trim to access the manual fuel filler flap release. Pull the lever (A) to open the filler flap.



Vehicle Horn

To sound the horn press the centre pad of the steering wheel at any of the positions shown.



ASTON MARTIN

Trip Computer

Press the button (A) for less than three seconds cycles through the trip computer functions one at a time. Trip Computer information is viewed in the message centre (right).

 If an information message displays, after reading and acting on the information provided press the Read button (B) to return to the trip display.



Range - Estimated travel distance with the fuel available (no reset). The minimum distance displayed will read 15 mile (20 km). Below this distance will show '---

Average Fuel - Average fuel consumption since last reset. Press A for more than three seconds but less than five seconds to reset. Press A for five seconds or more will reset both the average fuel consumption and average speed. 'Infocenter is Reset' will be displayed in the message centre (right). Press the **READ** button acknowledge the message.

30
MILES
TO EMPTY
TANK

30.0 MPH
AVERAGE

Instantaneous Fuel - Indicates the fuel consumption over the last three seconds of travel (no reset).

30.0 MPG
INSTANT.

Average Speed - Shows the average speed since last reset. Press A for more than three seconds but less than five seconds to reset. Press A for five seconds or more will reset both the average speed and average fuel consumption. 'Infocenter is Reset' will be displayed in the message centre (right). Press the **READ** button acknowledge the message.

30.0 MPH
AVERAGE
SPEED

Present Speed - Indicates the present vehicle speed.

 *Driver aid only.*

 *Trip computer default screen.*

Blank Screen - Blank screen will show.



Display Units

With the ignition ON press the Read button (C) and the Trip Computer control (D) together for three seconds to change the trip computer display units.



ASTON MARTIN

Cruise Control

Cruise control can be used to maintain a selected vehicle speed, above 22 mph (35 km/h), without having to use the accelerator.



- 1 **RES** - Resume the set speed retained in memory.
- 2 **SET** - Set the speed or accelerate and decelerate.
- 3 **ON/OFF** - Switches cruise control ON and OFF.
- 4 **CAN** - Cancels cruise control but retains the set speed in memory.

Operation

Warning

*** Only use cruise control when conditions are favorable, for example, straight, dry, open roads with light traffic.**

Use the **ON/OFF** (3) switch to activate or deactivate cruise control. When cruise control is active 'Cruise' will show in the message centre (left) (Refer to 'Instrument Cluster', page 4.4).

 Under certain conditions cruise control will automatically switch OFF (Refer to 'Cruise Control Automatic Switch OFF', page 4.23).

When travelling at the desired speed, which must be above 22 mph (35 km/h), press **SET** (+ or -) (2). Cruise control will engage and maintain that speed without the need to use the accelerator pedal.

 Cruise control will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is pressed or when the vehicle speed falls below 22 mph (35 km/h).

Changing the Set Speed

There are three ways to change the set speed:

- Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed then press **SET** (+ or -).
- Accelerate or decelerate the speed by pressing and holding **SET** (+ or -) until the desired speed is obtained, then release the switch.
- Accelerate or decelerate the speed in steps of 1 mph (2 km/h) by briefly pressing and releasing **SET** (+ or -) until the desired speed is obtained.

Resuming the Set Speed

If the vehicle is accelerated above the set speed, then the set speed will be resumed when the accelerator pedal is released.

If **CAN** (4) is pressed, or the brake or clutch pedal is pressed, the cruise control will disengage but the set speed memory will be retained. Press **RES** (1) and the vehicle will return to the set speed.

 ***RES should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.***

 ***It is not recommended to resume set speed when a low gear is selected as excessive engine speeds will occur.***

 *Cruise control will not resume at speeds below 22 mph (35 km/h). **RES** will not operate if the ignition has been switched OFF.*

Cruise Control Automatic Switch OFF

Cruise control will automatically switch OFF and clear the memory when:

- The ignition is switched OFF
- A fault occurs. The cruise control system will switch OFF and cannot be used until the fault is cleared
- The parking brake is applied
- Maximum vehicle speed is reached

Cruise control will automatically switch OFF but the set speed will stay in the memory when:

- The **CAN** button is pressed
- The brake pedal is pressed
- Vehicle speed falls below 22 mph (35 km/h)

- Neutral, Park or Reverse gear positions are selected
- The difference between the actual and set speed is too great
- When the set speed is above 90 mph (144 km/h); cruise control will disengage automatically after approximately 20 minutes
- The accelerator pedal is used to accelerate beyond the set speed for too long a period

Ambient Temperature

The ambient temperature (outside temperature) is displayed in the top right corner of the Infotainment centre display.

 *If the vehicle has been travelling a while and then is stopped in a shaded or enclosed area the ambient temperature may rise, this is due to the heat from the engine bay. The ambient temperature display will reflect the true ambient temperature once the vehicle is moving again or the engine bay cools down.*

 *If required the display units can be changed from °C to °F or °F to °C (Refer to 'Display Units', page 7.8)*

Tire Pressure Monitoring

Warning

*** Tire pressure sensing is not intended to replace driver awareness of tire performance or the need for recommended weekly checks on tire condition and pressure.**

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (if your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that switches ON a low tire pressure telltale ('Warning symbol' (Refer to 'Tire Pressure', page 4.9) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale comes ON, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressures, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger switch ON the TPMS low tire pressure warning symbol.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction telltale to indicate when the system is not operating properly.

The TPMS malfunction telltale is combined with the low tire pressure telltale (A).



When the system detects a malfunction, the warning telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then stay ON. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction telltale is ON, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to make sure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Operation

The system consists of a control unit (B), mounted in the front passenger footwell, and tire pressure sensors, one located in each road wheel.

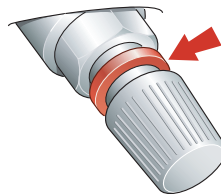


Each pressure sensor constantly monitors its tire pressure and sends this information to the control unit.

The control unit has a system LED to indicate the system status, and one status LED per road wheel.

 The control unit road wheel status LEDs are color coded to the colored collars on the road wheel valves.

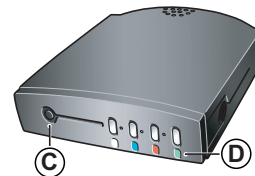
Each pressure monitoring device has a color coded collar. Make sure the colored collars are installed correctly, i.e. after new tires are installed.



Roadwheel	Color
Front Right	Green
Front Left	Red
Rear Right	Blue
Rear Left	Yellow

At the start of each journey, with the ignition ON or with the engine running, the low tire pressure warning symbol will come ON for approximately five seconds and then go OFF.

The control unit LEDs (C (System Status)) and D (Tire Status)) will flash amber continuously. Once a speed of 6 mph (10 km/h) has been reached the LEDs start to receive signals from the pressure monitoring devices in the road wheels. The system status LED will change to steady green and the tire LEDs will extinguish one by one.



 The control unit stays active until the vehicle has come to a halt and the ignition is switched OFF.

Warnings

Warning

*** When a tire low pressure warning is detected reduce vehicle speed to an appropriate safe level and stop at the first safe and convenient place to inspect the tire(s).**

 If stationary for 20 minutes or more (engine running or ignition ON) the tire pressure warning symbol will come ON and 'Tire System Fault' will show in the message centre (right). If, after moving off (allow three to four minutes driving (maximum 20 minutes)), the symbol and message do not clear then the system may be at fault. Stop and check the system.

If the tire warning symbol comes ON while driving, reduce speed to 30 mph (48 km/h) and stop in safe place as soon as possible. Do not stop the engine.

 A warning message will also show in the message centre (right) indicating a tire fault or a system fault.

Ensuring that neutral has been selected and that the parking brake is applied, check the status of the control unit LEDs. After noting the control unit LEDs status stop the engine and follow the actions listed in the following tables.

Warning Symbol	Constant.
Message Centre (Right)	Check Tires.
Control module	Control module LED constant green . Tire LED(s) constant red .
Fault	Tire pressure below specification.

Action

Check the tire pressure of the affected tire(s) indicated by the tire LEDs on the control unit. Reinflate the affected tire(s). After inflating the tire(s) to the manufacturer's recommended inflation pressure as shown on the tire label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least five minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the Warning symbol will go OFF.

Warning Symbol	Flashing for 75 seconds then constant.
Message Centre (Right)	Tire System Fault.
Control module	Control module LED flashing amber . Tire(s) LED(s) constant amber .
Fault	Tire transmitter fault.

Possible Cause

- Wheels and tires have been installed which do not have TPMS sensors

Action

Continue at a reduced speed of 30 mph (48 km/h) maximum. Have the TPMS checked at the earliest opportunity. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Warning Symbol	Flashing for 75 seconds then constant.
Message Centre (Right)	Tire System Fault.
Control module	Control module LED constant red .
Fault	System failure.

Possible Cause

- The TPMS sensors have become defective
- An unapproved accessory is interfering with the TPMS
- A general fault has been detected in the TPMS

Action

Continue at a reduced speed of 30 mph (48 km/h) maximum. Have the control unit and the tire transmitters checked at the earliest opportunity. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer.



ASTON MARTIN



Driving

Contents

Driving Safety	5.2	Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS).....	5.12
Starting the Engine	5.2	Parking Brake	5.13
Automatic Transmission	5.4	Dynamic Stability Control (DSC).....	5.14
PRND Buttons	5.5	Fuel Filling	5.16
Touchtronic Controls	5.6	Catalytic Converters	5.17
Sport Mode.....	5.8	Rear Parking Assist.....	5.18
Fault Conditions.....	5.9	Front and Rear Parking Assist (Option).....	5.19
Manual Transmission	5.10	Driving Techniques	5.21
Footbrake	5.11		

Driving Safety

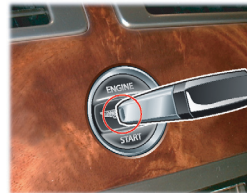
- Always wear your seat belt
- Never drive under the influence of alcohol or drugs
- Always obey all speed and traffic laws and regulations. Never drive faster than the posted speed limit or than conditions allow
- Be particularly careful driving on slippery or wet surfaces
- This vehicle is a high performance vehicle and has handling characteristics you may not be accustomed to. Familiarize yourself with the vehicle and always drive prudently, being aware of your own limitations and the limitations of the vehicle. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate the vehicle properly can result in accident and injury
- Follow the maintenance schedule prescribed in this guide
- Never allow the vehicle to be driven by inexperienced drivers

Starting the Engine

Warning

*** Only use the vehicle key in the Ignition Control. Do not place any objects, including fingers, into the Ignition Control other than the vehicle key. Objects other than the vehicle key may cause the Ignition Control to fail.**

! The vehicle key must only be inserted into the Ignition Control with the two indents first, as shown. Attempting to insert the larger end first the key may damage the Ignition Control.



 Insert the key to position 'II' by using the flat of a finger, as shown.

Check that the parking brake is applied.

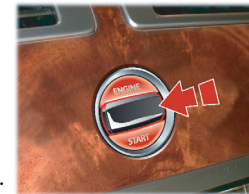
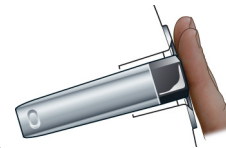
Insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control and gently press the key until it is flush with the Ignition Control bezel and release (position 'II').

Fully press the:

Automatic Only - Brake pedal down.

Manual Only - Clutch pedal down.

The Ignition Control will show red.



 The engine will not start until the Ignition Control shows red. The Ignition Control will show red (Ignition Control active) only if the brake (automatic) or clutch (manual) pedal is fully pressed down and the steering lock has released.

Press the key fully into the Ignition Control, hold in until the engine starts and release.

The vehicle key will sit flush with the Ignition Control bezel while the engine is running. The Ignition Control will show a white light when the engine is running, and then fade out.



 ***Do not press the vehicle key while driving. If the key is pressed in and released the engine will stop. If the key is removed from the Ignition Control while driving the engine will stop but the steering lock will not engage until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.***

If the engine fails to start the vehicle key must be returned to position 'I' to crank the engine again.

Press the key fully in, without depressing the brake (automatic) or clutch (manual) pedal, and release. The key will gently return to position 'I'. Start the engine start procedure again.

Engine Quick Start

1. Check that the parking brake is applied.
2. Fully press the brake (automatic) or clutch (manual) pedal down.
3. Insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control and press the key fully in, hold in until the engine starts then release.

When moving straight to engine start the vehicle system will take short time (approximately 1.4 seconds) to complete a system check and release the steering lock before allowing the engine to crank.

Starting From Cold

The engine management system automatically compensates for cold or warm start conditions and makes appropriate adjustments to the fuel and air mixture and ignition timing.

Stopping the Engine

Press the vehicle key fully in and release. The engine will stop as the key returns to position 'I'. Withdraw the vehicle key from the Ignition Control.



Automatic Transmission

The Automatic transmission has two drive modes.

Auto Drive Mode

In Auto Drive mode gearshifts are made using the Park, Reverse, Neutral and Drive (PRND) buttons mounted on the Centre Stack. While driving forward gearshifts are made automatically according to various driving parameters, i.e. road speed, current selected gear and accelerator demands. When the vehicle is stationary the transmission will select first gear, ready to move off immediately when the accelerator is pressed.

While in Auto Drive mode move to Touchtronic mode at any time by pulling back pulling back on either the upshift or downshift gearshift paddles, mounted behind the steering wheel (Refer to 'Touchtronic Controls', page 5.6).

As a paddle is pulled back a gearshift will occur, this will be an upshift or downshift according to which paddle is pulled.

Kick-Down

In Auto Drive mode Kick-down is used in circumstances where rapid acceleration is required, i.e. when overtaking. Kick-down is when the accelerator pedal is quickly and fully depressed, causing the transmission to change down to the lowest gear possible to achieve maximum acceleration. The gear engaged depends on the road speed at the time of kick-down.

Touchtronic Mode

In Touchtronic mode forward gears and Neutral are selected by using the paddles located behind the steering wheel. Reverse and Park selected by using the PRND buttons.

While in Paddle Shift mode move to Auto Drive mode at any time by pressing the **DRIVE** PRND button.

 *Neutral can also be selected by pressing the **NEUTRAL** PRND button.*



- 1 **PARK** - Press and release to select Park once the vehicle is stationary. The transmission will mechanically lock. If the vehicle key is moved to position '0' or removed from the Ignition control while the vehicle is at a standstill, the transmission will automatically select Park.

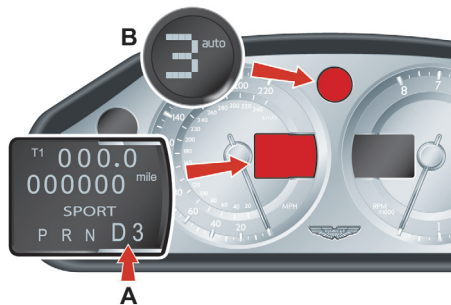
 **Always make sure that the parking brake is applied.**

 *It is not possible to select Park above 1 mph (2 km/h).*

- 2 **REVERSE** - When stationary and with the footbrake applied, press to select Reverse. When Reverse is selected, **R** will show red in the Gear Position Indicator Display (GPID) (B) and an audible warning will sound.
- 3 **NEUTRAL** - When stationary and with the footbrake applied, press to select Neutral.
- 4 **DRIVE** - When stationary and with the footbrake applied, press to select forward gears.

 *If the brake pedal is not pressed the message centre (right) will display '**Press Brake Pedal**' and an audible warning will sound.*

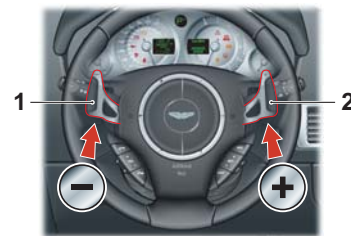
The message centre (left) (A) displays the current gear selection (R, D1, D2, etc.) while the Gear Position Indicator Display (GPID) (B) displays **D** (Drive), **R** (Reverse) or **P** (Park) according to current gear selection. The GPID will show 'auto'.



 If the vehicle speed is less than 3 mph (5 km/h), Reverse may be selected from Drive, without pressing the brake pedal, to enable a vehicle 'rocking' i.e. to enable vehicle movement out of mud, snow, etc. If 3 mph (5 km/h) is exceeded then the transmission will automatically select Neutral.

Touchtronic Controls

Neutral and forward gearshifts can be selected by pulling back and releasing the gearshift paddles mounted on the steering column.



Park and Reverse are selected by using the Centre Stack mounted PRND buttons.

- 1 Downshift Paddle.
- 2 Upshift Paddle.

 Neutral can also be selected by pressing the **NEUTRAL** PRND button.

From Neutral and with the footbrake applied pull back on either the upshift or downshift gearshift paddle to select first gear. If in Park or Reverse press the **DRIVE** PRND button first then pull back on a gearshift paddle to enter Touchtronic mode. As the vehicle speed increases and decreases, make upshifts and downshifts by pulling and releasing the upshift or downshift gearshift paddle.

If no gearshift has been requested by pulling back on a paddle, upshifts and downshifts will occur automatically if the engine speed rises or lowers to its maximum or minimum operating limits (unless the transmission is in Sport mode (Refer to 'Sport Mode', page 5.8)).

When stationary select Neutral by pulling back on both gearshift paddles simultaneously. When selecting Neutral from Park the brake pedal must be depressed.

The message centre (left) displays the actual gear currently selected (R, D1, D2, etc.). The GPID also displays the current gear selected but may display the target gear when a gearshift is requested (either **1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, R** (Reverse) or **P** (Park)). The GPID will show 'touch'.



ASTON MARTIN

Sport Mode



A

Sport mode can be selected while in Auto Drive or Touchtronic modes. Press the Sport button (A) once to enter Sport mode and press again to exit Sport mode. The Sport button LED will come ON and 'Sport' will display in the message centre (left) when sport mode is engaged.

When Sport mode is engaged while in:

Auto Mode - Upshifts and downshifts occur at higher engine speeds to provide a sportier drive.

 When selecting Sport while in Auto Drive sixth gear a downshift to fifth gear will occur (this will not happen if Cruise Control is active). Sixth gear is inhibited until Sport mode is switched OFF.

Touchtronic Mode - Automatic upshifts are inhibited, the upshift paddle must be pulled back and released to make an upshift (downshifts will occur automatically if the engine speed lowers to its minimum operating limits).

To inform the driver that the current gear has reached its upper rev. limit the GPID gear indication will change from green to flashing red.



Maximum Engine Speed

The maximum safe engine speed is 6,850 rpm. If this speed is exceeded, fuel supply to the engine is reduced. As the engine speed reduces back to a safe level, fuel supply is progressively restored.

Park Override

If the vehicle fails to start or has broken down the Automatic transmission will move into Park. To tow or move the vehicle a Park Override lever is provided to manually disengage the Automatic transmission park lock.

⚠ Apply the parking brake before operating the Park Override lever. There is the danger that the vehicle will roll, depending on the incline of the road.

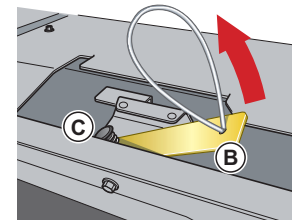
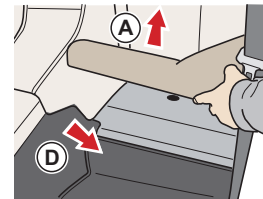
Operating the Park Override

Apply the parking brake. Remove the left rear seat base (2+2 seating (A)) or the trim panel (2+0 seating) and unscrew the two screws that secure the park override lever cover. Remove the cover.

Pull the Park Override lever (B) fully up on the ratchet, fully releasing the parking lock.

After towing or moving the vehicle apply the parking brake. Remove the Kickboard trim panel (D (velcro attachment)). Lift the Park Override lever slightly, reach through the opening at position D and press the ratchet release button (C). With the ratchet release button pressed lower the Park Override lever back to the stop. The parking lock is now engaged. Install the kickboard trim panel, the park override lever cover and the rear seat base or trim panel.

⚠ The warning message ('Gearbox Fault, Parklock Failure') in the message centre (right) must disappear and the GPID must change from N to P. Otherwise there is the danger that the vehicle will roll away.



Limp-Home Mode

If a fault is detected the vehicle may go into one of three 'Limp Home' modes:

Electrical - 'Gearbox Fault Reduced Function' will be displayed in the message centre (right). Touchtronic and Sport modes may be disabled.

Gearshifts will still be possible but shift quality will be degraded. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

 In certain circumstances forward drive will be restricted to a fixed gear.

Reduced Engine Performance - 'Reduced Engine Perform' will display in the message centre (right). Engine performance will be restricted. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Mechanical - 'Limphome No Gear Change Possible' will display in the message centre (right) and an audible warning will sound. If travelling forwards in Auto Drive or Touchtronic mode the vehicle will go into a locked gear (third or fifth depending on vehicle speed).

 ***Do not attempt to change gear position while in mechanical limp home mode. If a gearshift request is detected at a speed below 12.5 mph (20 km/h) the engine will stop and the parking lock will engage.***

 ***At a speed above 12.5 mph (20 km/h) the request and any other transmission request will be rejected and the vehicle will continue in third or fifth gear.***

If entering mechanical limp home mode in any position other than Auto Drive or Touchtronic mode the park lock will engage (Refer to 'Park Override', page 5.9). Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Manual Transmission

The manual transmission features a six speed gearbox.



Gearshifts

Press the clutch pedal, move the gear lever to the required gear position then slowly raise the clutch pedal.

Reverse gear is selected by overcoming spring resistance.

A red 'R' will show in the GSID when the transmission is in reverse.



To inform the driver that the current gear has reached its upper rev. limit the GSID will indicate revs increasing (one bar, two bars, three bars then three bars flashing). To avoid hitting the rev. limiter shift gear before or as the GSID reaches three flashing bars.



 For the first 1243 mile (2000 km) and when ever the engine temperature is below 104°F (40°C) the shift control will indicate early shift changes to protect the engine.

Maximum Engine Speed

The maximum safe engine speed is 7,200 rpm. If this speed is exceeded, fuel supply to the engine is reduced. As the engine speed reduces back to a safe level, fuel supply is progressively restored.

Footbrake

The footbrake operates through a vacuum boosted, dual (diagonal split) circuit, hydraulic system incorporating an Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).

Warning

*** In the event of a brake failure bring the vehicle to a halt as soon as it is safe to do so. Do not continue to drive.**



If vacuum boost fails or one circuit fails the footbrake will still operate but with greater pedal pressure, increased pedal travel and longer stopping distances.



After a long drive over salted or gritted roads or if driving in heavy rain, through water or a vehicle wash, the braking action may be delayed and increased braking pressure may be required.



Vacuum boost is only available while the engine is running.

Brake Warnings

While driving, if the brake warning symbol  comes ON, it indicates either that:

- The parking brake is not fully released
- The brake pads require regular maintenance
- The brake fluid level has fallen below an acceptable level



A warning message will show in the message centre (right).

Stop, as soon as possible in a safe and convenient place. Apply the footbrake and make sure that the parking brake is fully released. If the parking brake is fully released and the warning symbol stays ON, **do not drive** the vehicle. Contact the nearest Aston Martin Dealer. It is essential that the brake system is checked immediately, preferably by an Aston Martin Dealer.

 Warning

*** If the brake warning symbol comes ON, you should immediately be prepared for possible increased stopping distances and possible partial failure of the braking system.**

 *Brake Noise: The high performance brake system used on this vehicle is designed to provide optimal braking under all operating conditions. However, under all driving conditions an inherent characteristic of this braking system is some brake noise, i.e. wire brush noise. Certain combinations of speed, braking forces and ambient conditions may cause the brakes to squeal.*

Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS)

The anti-lock braking system (ABS) helps prevent the road wheels from locking and skidding during emergency braking. This also assists the driver in maintaining steering and directional stability.

If, in an emergency braking situation, the braking force applied begins to exceed the tire to road adhesion, the ABS is activated to prevent the road wheels locking. When this happens a pulsating effect is felt through the brake pedal. This is a normal ABS effect.

Safety

In all cases it is the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions. The fact that a vehicle is equipped with ABS must never allow the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users.

The addition of ABS cannot overcome the consequences of trying to stop in too short a distance, cornering at too high a speed, or the risk of aquaplaning (where the tires are prevented from contacting the road surface by a layer of water).

The driver should always take road conditions into account. A slippery road surface always requires more braking distance for a given speed, even with ABS. Possible extensions of stopping distance compared to locked wheels may occur during ABS operation on slushy snow, gravel, sand or certain heavily corrugated or ridged warning sections of road surfaces.

If any braking system malfunction occurs, immediately have the Braking and ABS systems checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.

ABS Warning

Warning

*** If the ABS warning symbol comes ON, you should be aware that wheels could lock during extreme braking or when braking on slippery surfaces.**

ABS is monitored for correct operation while the ignition is ON. If a fault is detected, the ABS warning symbol  will come ON and the ABS will be partly or fully disabled.

Normal braking will continue to function without ABS.

In the event of an ABS fault, consult your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

Parking Brake

 **Always fully apply the parking brake before leaving the vehicle.**

To apply the parking brake:

Press the footbrake pedal firmly down. Keep the pedal pressed down and pull the parking brake lever up until resistance is felt. At this point depress the parking brake button and continue to pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent. Release the button and allow the parking brake lever to lower.

 *If the ignition is ON the parking brake warning symbol on the instrument cluster will come ON, indicating that the parking brake is applied .*

To release the parking brake:

Press the footbrake pedal firmly down. Keep the pedal pressed down and pull the parking brake lever up until resistance is felt. Pull up against the resistance and depress the release button. Keep the button depressed and push the lever down.

If the parking brake lever is not fully OFF, the parking brake warning symbol will stay ON.



! Always check that the brake warning symbol is OFF before moving off. Do not attempt to drive the vehicle if the brake warning symbol stays ON.

 An audible warning will sound if the vehicle is moving and the parking brake is still applied.

- If the vehicle is parked on a hill and facing **uphill**, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb
- If the vehicle is parked on a hill and facing **downhill**, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel towards the curb

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)

Warnings

- * *It is the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions.*
- * *DSC must never allow the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users. DSC cannot overcome consequences of applying too much engine power for prevailing conditions.*

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is a system designed to enhance driving safety by improving the vehicle handling when the tires are at the limits of their grip capabilities. This is achieved through the reduction of engine torque and strategic application of the brakes at individual wheels.

Driver Interface and Control

The DSC system is switched ON when the engine is started. When the system is operating, the DSC warning symbol will flash.

DSC can be switched OFF by pressing the DSC button (A) for a minimum of four seconds. Press and release the DSC button again to switch the DSC ON.

! Use tires of the same manufacturer, brand, tread pattern and correct size specified for this vehicle on all four road wheels. Do not mix worn tires.

! The DSC may not operate correctly when using tire chains or a temporary spare tire.



! *If repair or replacement of the steering or other surrounding equipment is necessary, always refer to your Aston Martin Dealer. If the centre position of the steering deviates, the DSC may not operate correctly because there is a sensor in the steering which detects steering wheel position.*

! The DSC button LED and the DSC symbol (instrument cluster) will be ON continuously when the system is switched OFF.

! 'DSC FUNCTION OFF' will be displayed in the message centre (right) to indicate that DSC is OFF.

Fault Indication

A malfunction in the DSC control system will be indicated by the following:

- The DSC symbol in the instrument cluster will be ON continuously
- A warning message will be displayed in the message centre (right) depending on the fault detected

If vehicle cruise control is engaged it will automatically disengage when traction control is operating.



Traction Control

! Warnings

*** It is the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions.**

*** Traction Control must never allow the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users.**

*** Traction Control cannot overcome consequences of applying too much engine power for prevailing conditions.**

! **Do not maintain engine power at such a level that traction control is activated for long periods (more than about one minute). This reduces fuel to the engine and may cause the exhaust catalysts to overheat. Overheating of the exhaust catalysts can destroy them.**

Traction control is a function of DSC, and is operated in association with the DSC system.

Traction control prevents excessive wheel spin at standing starts, or during acceleration. Wheel spin is usually caused by excessive use of the accelerator pedal, or slippery, loose or bumpy road surfaces.

To prevent excessive wheel spin and maintain vehicle stability in such situations the traction control system will:

- Brake the driven wheel when it starts to slip
- And, or, adapt the engine torque to a level corresponding to the traction available on the road surface

 *These symptoms are normal and will clear as wheel spin is eliminated and normal engine power is restored.*

During activation, the DSC warning symbol will flash. The driver may experience a loss in power or temporary 'misfire' as engine power is reduced.

If traction control cuts in when driving on extended icy or slippery surfaces, reduce engine power as necessary until the DSC warning symbol goes OFF.

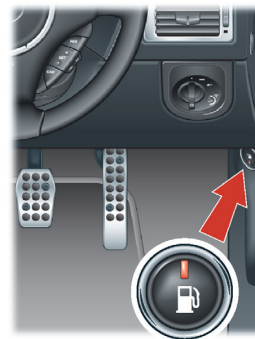
Traction control is always operational when DSC is ON.

Fuel Filling

Open the fuel flap by pressing the fuel flap release button.

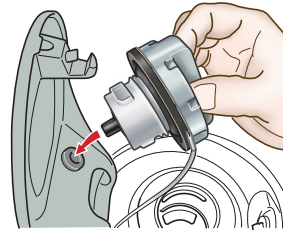
 *The vehicle alarm must be OFF to enable the fuel flap release button.*

If the filler flap will not open when the release button is pressed, open the filler flap manually (Refer to 'Filler Flap Emergency Release', page 4.18).



Rotate the cap counterclockwise past resistance, then lift off. Place the cap into its holder.

Install the cap by turning clockwise past resistance, until three 'clicks' are felt as the cap is fully tightened. Close and latch the fuel flap.



 *The fuel tank filler neck has a restricted opening which will only accommodate the fuel supply nozzle of unleaded fuel pumps.*

The fuel system will not permit overfill but there will be instances when the nozzle will shut OFF prematurely. If this happens wait five seconds after nozzle shut OFF before trying to fill again.

Fuel Cutoff

In the event of a vehicle accident the vehicle will enter Crash mode. Power to the fuel pumps will terminate, thereby reducing fire risk.

Catalytic Converters

Warnings

** Do not park over dry grass, leaves or other combustible material. Significant fire risk exists because of residual heat in the catalytic converters.*

** Do not drive through deep water. Rapid cooling of catalysts may cause them to break up.*

Catalytic convertors convert harmful exhaust gasses into less noxious substances and so reduce environmental pollution.

They operate at high temperatures and continue to radiate a considerable amount of heat after switching the ignition OFF.

Leaded fuel will cause irreparable damage to catalytic converters. If leaded fuel is inadvertently added to the fuel tank **do not start the engine, do not drive the vehicle.**

Contact your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

Rear Parking Assist

Warning

** **Rear parking assist does not replace need for total vigilance and caution when parking or reversing.***

 ***When parking or reversing make full use of rearward vision and all mirrors to be aware of persons or objects in the vicinity of the vehicle. Take appropriate measures to protect them from danger.***

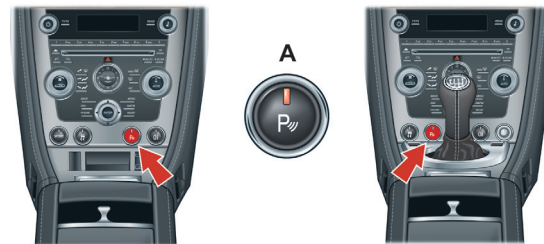
 ***In heavy rain or similar adverse conditions, the rear parking assist sensors may not always be able to accurately measure distance to close objects. A fully laden vehicle or irregular obstacles may also cause inaccurate measurements.***

 *The 'beeps' start at approximately 5.5 ft (1.7 m) from any obstruction. The 'beep' becomes continuous at distances less than 1 ft (30 cm).*

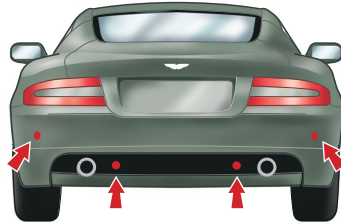
Rear parking assist assists in detecting obstructions as the vehicle is reversed towards them. The system is active when reverse gear is selected. When the system is operating an intermittent 'beep' signal will be heard. The 'beep' increases in persistence as the vehicle reverses to an obstruction.

 *If reversing into a confined area, i.e. a home garage, the rear parking assist **outer** sensors will detect the side walls 1 ft (30 cm) and, after three seconds, the 'Beep' sequence will stop. As reversing continues the rear parking assist **inner** sensors will detect the rear wall or obstruction and the 'Beep' sequence will start again.*

Press the parking assist button (A) to disable rear parking assist. The button LED will come ON to show that the system is **disabled**.



The parking sensors should be kept clear of dirt, snow etc. to make sure of clean signals and accurate distance monitoring.



Front and Rear Parking Assist (Option)

! *It is always the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them. Some overhanging objects, barriers, thin obstructions or painted surfaces which could possibly cause damage to the vehicle may not be detected by the system. Always be vigilant when reversing.*

! *If, for example, you are driving within a confined space such as a home garage, the outer sensors will detect the side walls and after three seconds will switch the tone OFF. However, as movement continues, the inner sensors will eventually detect the rear wall and will start the tone again.*

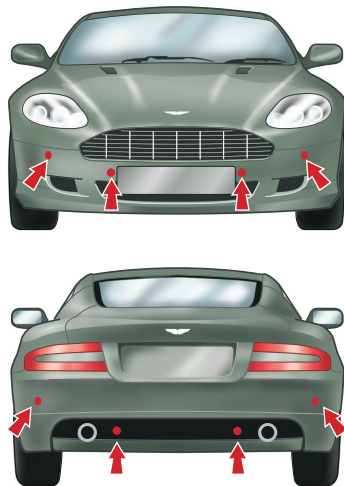
! *Do not clean the sensors with abrasive or sharp objects.*

! *The rear sensors are not active when the gear selector is in neutral, therefore care should be taken if moving the vehicle as the tone will not sound.*

 *For reliable operation, the sensors in the front and rear bumpers should be kept free from ice, frost and grime.*

 *When using a high pressure spray the sensors should only be sprayed briefly and not from a distance of less than 8 in (200 mm). Do not clean the sensors with abrasive materials.*

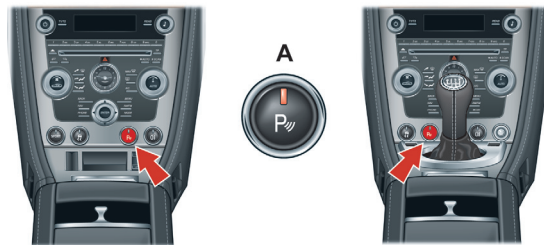
The parking assist system provides an audible warning, when driving forwards or rearwards, if objects are detected within range of the vehicle.



Operation

The Parking assist system defaults to inactive when the ignition is switched ON.

The system becomes active when reverse gear is selected, or if the Parking Assist button (A) is pressed at speeds below 9 mph (15 km/h).



The system will switch OFF when the vehicle moves forwards above 9 mph (15 km/h).

The parking button LED will come ON when the system is switched ON. The LED will flash if a fault is detected in the system.

! In heavy rain or similar adverse conditions, the rear parking assist sensors may not always be able to accurately measure distance to close objects. A fully laden vehicle or irregular obstacles may also cause inaccurate measurements.

📖 If the system has a fault, when engaging reverse gear or turning the ignition ON, then a single three second tone will be heard (only once per ignition cycle) and the parking assist button LED will blink. The system is automatically disabled when a fault is detected.

If an obstacle is detected at the front or rear of the vehicle, a series of beeps will be heard from the front or rear speaker respectively, which increases in rate as the vehicle nears the obstacle.

The beep becomes a continuous tone when an obstacle is detected at or within approximately 12 in (300 mm) from the rear or 10 in (250 mm) from the front of the vehicle.

 *Parking assist may sound spurious tones if it detects an ultrasonic frequency using the same band as the sensors.*

 *The system consists of inner and outer sensors. When manoeuvring forward into a Garage, etc., the front outer sensors will cease detection if they detect a stationary or receding object for three seconds or more, this allows detection directly at the front of the vehicle in this type of manoeuvre.*

Driving Techniques

Procedures for driving this vehicle may be unfamiliar to many new owners. Please take time to safely acquire the necessary new driving skills. Practise in safe, lower speed conditions before investigating the high performance potential of the vehicle. Please make sure of a safe and enjoyable entry into this new phase of Aston Martin motoring.

Performance Driving Courses are available to enable customers not only to understand the control functions of their vehicle but also the basic principles of Performance Driving.

Please contact your Aston Martin Dealer for further information.

Wet Conditions

When driving in wet conditions, water can build up under your tires so that they ride on a layer of water. This is called aquaplaning or hydroplaning. When this happens, you have little or no control.

Aquaplaning is more prone to happening at higher road speeds if there is a lot of water on the road and particularly if the tires are also under inflated or approaching minimum tread depth.

It is important to take bends or curves at a safe, reasonable speed, particularly when driving on wet or slippery road surfaces.

Slow down when it is raining.

Driving Through Deep Water

 ***If in any doubt whether to drive through deep water, always take the side of caution to avoid potentially costly damage to the vehicle's engine or other essential systems.***

If driving on flooded roads, through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed with extreme caution, especially when the depth is not known. Never drive in water deeper than the lower edge of the front bumper.

Water can be splashed up into the engine air intakes located in the front upper grille and cause extensive damage to the engine or the vehicle may stall.

 *Waves caused by other vehicles or natural causes can also splash water in the engine air intakes.*

Running-In

This vehicle is fully hot tested during manufacture and no special running-in procedures are necessary. Nevertheless it is prudent to limit engine loads (e.g. by accelerating gently and by using lower gears on steep hills or when negotiating tight turns) during the first 1,000 mile (1,600 km).



Convertible Roof (Volante)

Contents

Roof Operation	6.2
Manual Operation.....	6.6
Roof Maintenance.....	6.9
Deployable Rollbars	6.9
Wind Deflector	6.11

Roof Operation

Warnings

** Misuse of the Roof switch, especially by children, can result in injury due to entrapment in the Roof mechanism and locking points.*

** Before closing or opening the Roof, make sure that all occupants are clear of the Roof linkage, the windshield frame, door windows and rear quarter windows.*

 *The Roof will operate normally at temperatures above 14°F (-10°C).*

 *Before closing or opening the Roof, make sure that there are no objects placed on the rear sloping deck area which could interfere with the folded, stored Roof, especially the heated rear windshield glass. Even small objects can cause damage.*

 *Make sure that the Roof is always fully closed or fully opened.*

 *Do not store objects or items in the Roof storage area. Any objects or items stored there may cause damage to the Roof when attempting to open it. Even small objects can cause damage.*

 *Do not attempt to open the Roof if any objects are laying on top of the Roof.*

 *Continuous use of the Roof without the engine running will cause the vehicle battery to rapidly discharge.*

 *Avoid repetitive use of the Roof. This may cause the operating system to over heat and engage the thermal cut out. If this happens, wait ten minutes for the operating system to cool down before operating the Roof.*

 *Due to wind pressure when driving at very high speeds the door windows may not close correctly.*

Conditions for Operating the Roof

Warning

Keep the vehicle road speed down to a minimum until the Roof has completed its operation.

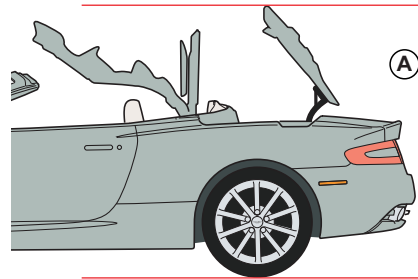
 **Aston Martin recommend that the Roof is only operated while the vehicle is stationary.**

- The trunk must be shut
- The ignition must be ON (engine running or not)
- Sufficient headroom is available for the Roof to close or open.
- Outside temperature must be above 14°F (-10°C)

 **Repeated operation of the Roof while the ignition is ON and the engine is not running will drain the vehicle battery.**

 The trunk lid will lock and will stay locked during Roof opening and closing operations.

 Minimum headroom (A) required to close or open the Roof is 60 in (1531 mm).



If the vehicle is moving while the Roof is being closed or opened, Roof movement will continue, **while the Roof switch is pressed**, until the Roof has locked in the closed or opened position.

While operating the Roof the following warnings will activate, depending on the vehicle speed:

2.5 to 3 mph (4 to 5 km/h) - 'Stop Safely for Roof Operation' will be displayed in the message centre (right).

3 to 40 mph (5 to 65 km/h) - 'Stop Safely for Roof Operation' will be displayed in the message centre (right), the amber warning triangle  will show and a single audible warning will sound. Roof movement will continue.

Over 40 mph (65 km/h) - 'Roof Failure Possible' will be displayed in the message centre (right), the amber warning triangle  will show and a continuous audible warning will sound. Roof movement will continue.

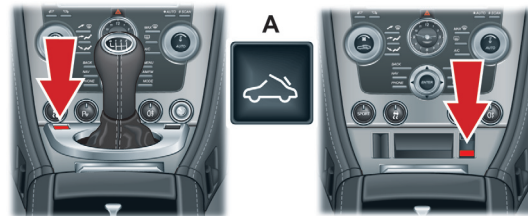
It is not possible to **start** Roof operation at speeds of 30 mph (50 km/h) or above. 'No Roof Operation Possible' will be displayed in the message centre (right), the amber warning triangle  will show and a single audible warning will sound.

 *While operating the Roof, if the Roof switch is released when travelling at 30 mph (50 km/h) or more, no Roof movement will be available until the vehicle speed drops below 30 mph (50 km/h).*

 Warning

*** Roof movement has not finished and locked until 'Roof Movement Complete' appears in the message centre (right).**

The Roof operation switch (A) is located on the centre console.



If at any time during the opening or closing procedure the switch is released – Roof movement will stop immediately.

'Roof Movement Paused' will appear in the message centre (right) and a continuous audible warning will sound until the Roof continues to lower or raise.

! *As soon as it is safe to do so continue the Roof movement. If the Roof is left in 'Pause' for ten minutes, hydraulic pressure will be lost. The Roof and Tonneau lid will relax and, gently, fall back. Powered Roof operation will be inhibited until the Roof has been manually fully opened or fully closed.*



Opening the Roof



Pull the Roof switch rearwards and hold until 'Roof Movement Complete' appears in the message centre (right).

If the door and rear quarter windows are required to be opened continue to press the switch after 'Roof Movement Complete' appears until the windows have opened.



Closing the Roof

! *Warning*

** Roof movement has not finished and locked until 'Roof Movement Complete' appears in the message centre (right).*

Push the Roof switch forwards and hold until 'Roof Movement Complete' appears in the message centre (right) and a single audible warning sounds.

If the door and rear quarter windows are required to be closed continue to press the switch after 'Roof Movement Complete' appears until the windows have closed.



Rear Quarter Windows

The rear quarter windows can be opened and closed independently of the Roof.

When the Roof is fully opened or closed use the Roof switch to open or close the rear quarter windows:

Roof Fully Closed - Push and hold the Roof switch to open or closed the rear quarter windows. Release the switch when the window movement has stopped.

Roof Fully Opened - Pull back and hold the Roof switch to open or closed the rear quarter windows. Release the switch when the window movement has stopped.

Manual Operation

In the unlikely event of the Roof failing during closing or opening (after the locks have released), the Roof can be manually closed and locked.



Warning

*** Keep fingers clear of the Roof linkage when moving the Roof manually.**



Vehicle Security. If the Roof fails always close and lock the Roof.



Do not open the Roof. Tonneau lid locks will not be available.



The message '**Roof Fail**' will show in the message centre (right).



The assistance of a second person may be required to close the Roof manually.

If the Roof fails, remove the vehicle key and wait for a minimum of five seconds.

Remove the allen key from the vehicle tool kit and place in the vehicle cabin.



The Allen key is required to lock the Roof in position.



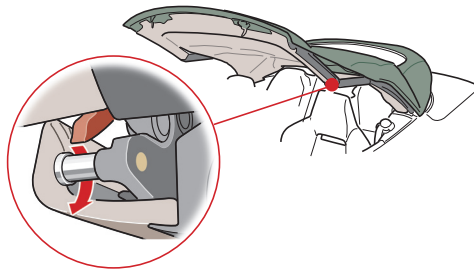
During this time the Roof hydraulics will relax allowing manual movement of the Roof. Some hydraulic fluid resistance will still be present in the operating rams. It may take considerable effort to fully close the Roof manually.

Close the Roof Manually:

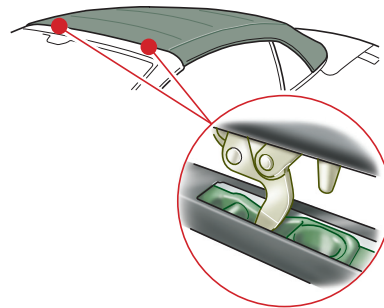
If the Tonneau Lid is Closed with the Roof on Top

Manually raise the Roof to the fully closed position.

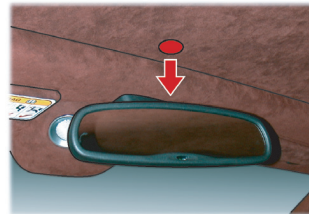
! *Make sure that the hook on the last Roof joint engages correctly on both sides.*



Remove the trim plug.

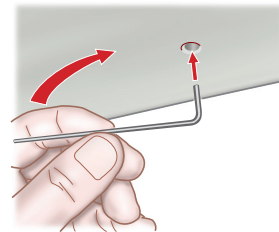


Make sure the two lock arms are located in their catches.



 *Locking the Roof manually may require the assistance of a second person to push down so the catches engage while the allen key is turned.*

Using the allen key provided in the vehicle tool kit, lock the Roof in position. Continue to turn the allen key until no more movement is possible.



! *Do not use power tools. The Roof manual lock and unlock mechanism may be damaged if power tools, i.e. an electric drill, are used to lock or unlock the Roof.*

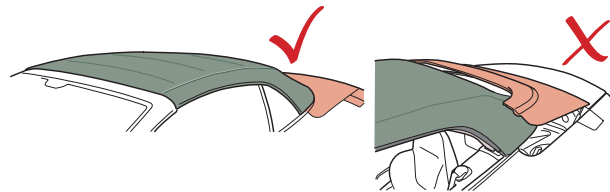
 *Many turns of the allen key will be required to lock the Roof.*

'Roof Movement Paused' will appear in the message centre (right) and a continuous 'beep' will activate until the Roof has been locked.

If the Tonneau Lid has Unlocked and the Roof is Underneath

! *Do not allow the Tonneau lid to rest on the Roof fabric.*

Manually lift the Tonneau lid. Continue to hold the Tonneau lid while closing the Roof. When the Roof rear has cleared the Tonneau lid, let the Tonneau lid slowly fall to close. Slowly raise the Roof to meet the top of the windscreen. The rear of the Roof will lay in position on the edge of the Tonneau lid.



Rear Quarter Windows

 Depending on the reason why the Roof fails, the rear quarter windows may not close when closing the Roof manually.

When the Roof has been manually closed and locked, switch the ignition to ON and attempt to close the rear quarter windows by operating the Roof close switch.



Roof Maintenance

If the Roof is left for prolonged periods in the opened position (folded), in certain circumstances (i.e. a wet or dirty Roof) permanent soiling along folds may occur in the Roof fabric.

Do not leave the Roof in the opened (folded) position for longer than necessary.

 ***Do not use automatic vehicle washes. Brushes, detergents and pressurized water jets may damage the Roof fabric.***

 ***Do not use power washers. Jets of water may damage the weather seals and the Roof fabric.***

 ***Do not use spot cleaners, chemical diluents or any organic cleaners. If in doubt, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.***

Roof Fabric Maintenance

(Refer to 'Convertible Roof Fabric (Volante)', page 11.53)

Deployable Rollbars

Warnings

**** Do not place any objects on the top of the deployable rollbar covers behind the rear seat backs.***

**** Do not allow any person to sit on the deployable rollbar covers at any time.***

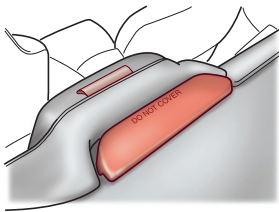
**** Do not attempt to service or modify the deployable rollbar system.***

The Volante is equipped with a deployable rollbar system, which is in addition to and independent of the airbag system.

 The deployable rollbar system and the airbag system react independently. The deployable rollbars and the airbags may deploy together or alone, depending on the type of impact.

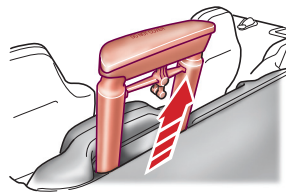
The deployable rollbar system comprises an electronic roll sensor unit integrated into the main crash sensor and two 'U' shaped roll bars, concealed behind the rear seat, which will deploy in the unlikely event of the vehicle rolling over.

The electronic roll sensor constantly monitors the vehicle attitude and road loads.



On sensing an impending roll over situation the electronic roll sensor sends a signal to the deployable rollbars, triggering a release.

The deployable rollbars then extend upward.



⚠ Warnings

*** If the Roof is closed the deployable rollbars will break through the rear glass.**

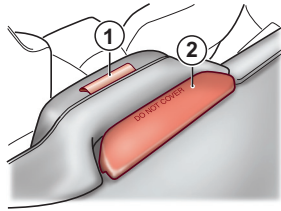
*** Do not attempt to reset the deployable rollbar system after it has deployed. It is a 'single use' system, if reset it will not deploy a second time.**

⚠ Extreme manoeuvres may cause the system to predict a roll over and deploy the rollbars for protection of the occupants. If such driving events are anticipated by the customer (e.g. Track day driving) the Roof should be retracted to allow the rollbars to deploy without damaging the vehicle.

If the deployable rollbar system has been deployed, proceed to your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.

Warning Labels

The following warning labels are located on the deployable rollbar system,



- 1 'Rollbar'
- 2 'Do Not Cover'

Wind Deflector

A wind deflector can be installed to enhance comfort when driving with the Roof down.

- Wind noise and turbulence are greatly reduced
- Heat retention is increased, offering open air cruising on colder days
- It easily installs to existing mounts within your vehicle
- The wind deflector can be left in place with the Roof closed or opened and stores easily within the trunk
- Easily folded and stowed away when not used

⚠ Take care when adjusting the driver or passenger seat position with the wind deflector installed. Make sure that the seats do not come into contact the wind deflector.

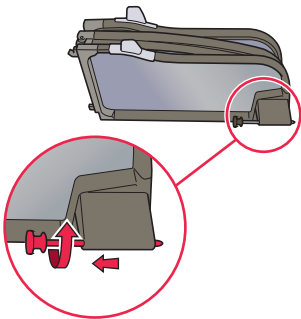
⚠ The wind deflector is not designed as a load carrier. Do not place objects or items on the wind deflector in either the closed or opened position.

Storage

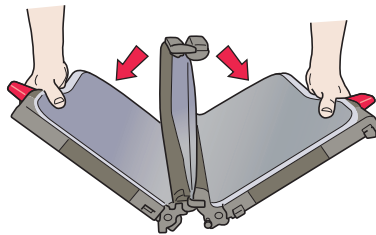
When the wind deflector is not required, remove it from the vehicle and place it in its storage bag. Place the storage bag in the vehicle trunk.

Installation

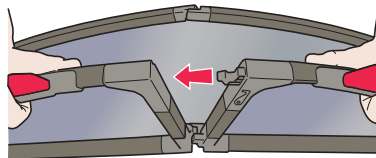
1. Remove the deflector from its storage bag. Make sure that the location pins are retracted. If not retracted pull the pins back and twist (left or right) to lock.



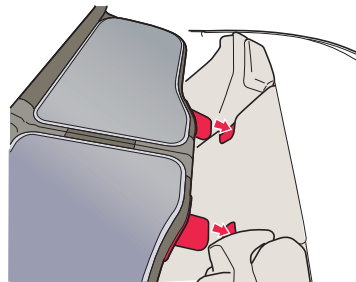
2. Unfold.



3. Open out and 'snap' connect.

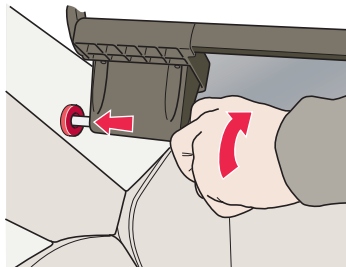


4. Locate the two tabs in to the openings provided in the rear seat backs.



5. With the tabs located line up the location pins and locate the two locking pins either side in the openings provided.

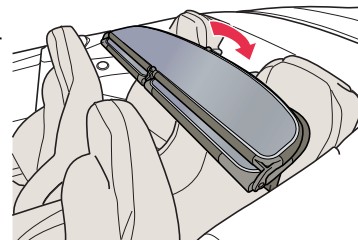
Twist the pins (left or right) to release and make sure they locate correctly.



Operation

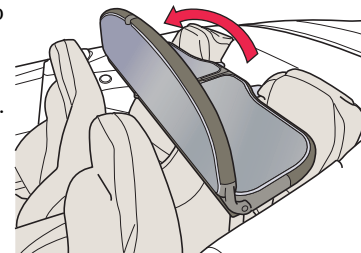
Lowered

Grab the top of the raised section and lower until a locating 'click' is heard.



Raised

Grab the rear of the top section and pull upwards (90°) until a locating 'click' is heard.



Removal

Remove the wind deflector from the vehicle by reversing the procedure to install.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



Climate Control

Contents

Operating Tips	7.2	Manual Operation.....	7.7
Control Switches	7.3	Solar and Temperature Sensors	7.8
Airflow Modes	7.4	Display Units.....	7.8
Automatic Operation	7.6		

Operating Tips

- A solar sensor is installed on top of the instrument panel, this should not be covered when driving
 - The intake grille of the in-vehicle temperature sensor is located in the driver's knee bolster, close to the centre console. To make sure of optimum temperature control this grille should not be obstructed
 - Moisture which forms on the evaporator in the air conditioning unit is discharged via a drain tube onto the road. After stopping, small puddles of water may form underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a system malfunction
 - Operate the climate control system with the engine running
- Clear all obstructions like leaves, snow and ice from the hood and the air inlet in the front grille to improve the system efficiency
 - Windows may fog up easily in humid weather. Use the climate control system to demist the windows
 - To help demist the windows, operate the air conditioner to dehumidify the air
 - Use the 'outside air' position in normal conditions. The 'recirculated air' position should be used temporarily when driving on dusty roads or for quick cooling or heating of the interior
 - If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows to let warm air escape, then close the windows and run the climate control system
- Run the climate control system at least once a month to keep internal parts lubricated
 - Have the climate control system checked before the weather gets hot. If the climate control system is low on refrigerant or has a malfunction, consult your Aston Martin Dealer
 - The vehicle is equipped with a pollen filter. It is necessary to change the filter periodically as indicated in scheduled maintenance. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer

Control Switches



- 1 DISPLAY** - Presents options, menus and information.
- 2 MAX**  - Press for maximum defrost or demist. Press again to switch OFF. Outside air intake is automatically selected and air conditioning is automatically started.
- 3 TEMPERATURE** - Set the required in vehicle temperature. Turn clockwise for hot and counterclockwise for cold. The selected temperature is shown on the **DISPLAY**.
- 4 AUTO** - Press for automatic climate control operation (Refer to 'Automatic Operation', page 7.6).
- 5 A/C** - When in Manual mode press and release to turn the air conditioning ON. Press the button again to turn the air conditioning OFF.

- 6 HEATED REAR WINDOW** - Press to activate the rear window heater. Switches OFF after 20 minutes if not manually switched OFF. When the heated rear window is activated the door mirror heaters will work for 6.5 minutes, then switch OFF.
- 7 AIR CIRCULATION** - Controls the source of air entering the vehicle. Press to select recirculated air (button LED ON). Press again to select outside air as source.
Use the recirculated air position when going through tunnels, driving in congested traffic (high engine exhaust areas) or when maximum cooling is required.
On start up the default position is outside air as source. Use this position for normal conditions and demisting.

⚠ Warning

*** Do not select recirculated air in cold or rainy weather, it may cause the interior glass to mist up.**

8 FAN SPEED - Turn the fan speed dial to set the required fan speed (clockwise for fast speed and counterclockwise for low speed). The fan speed is displayed on the **DISPLAY**.

9 AIRFLOW - Select the required airflow. The selected airflow mode is shown on the **DISPLAY** (Refer to 'Airflow Modes', page 7.4).

 Air conditioning may not function when the outside temperature approaches 0°C (32°F) (Indicator stays ON even when system is OFF).

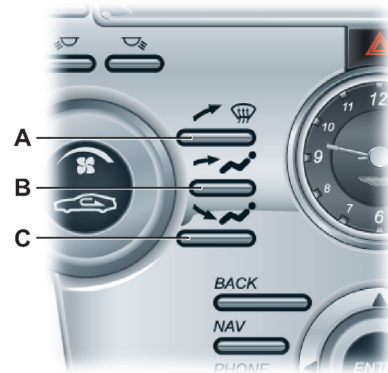
Airflow Modes

Press and release each button to activate or deactivate an airflow mode. By pressing one or more buttons at a time, seven airflow modes are available.

Mode	Button(s)
Windshield and Door Windows _a	A
Face Only	B
Feet Only _b	C
Windshield, Door Windows and Face	A+B
Windshield, Door Windows and Feet _c	A+C

- a. In addition a small bleed of air is directed into the face vents.
- b. In addition a small bleed of air is directed to the face vents, the windshield and door windows.
- c. In addition a small bleed of air is directed into the face vents.

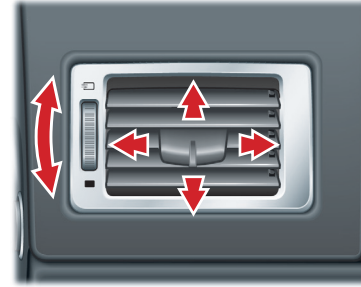
Mode	Button(s)
Face and Feet	B+C
Windshield, Door Windows, Face and Feet	A+B+C





Adjusting the Vents

To adjust the air flow vents:



ASTON MARTIN

Automatic Operation

Press **AUTO**. Using the **TEMPERATURE** dial set the required in-vehicle temperature (read the actual temperature setting in the top left of the **DISPLAY**). The **A/C** button LED will come ON.

Adjustments to fan speed, air flow and air recirculation will be made automatically according to the set temperature, interior and exterior conditions.

 When using the air conditioner, mist may come out from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.

 If resetting climate control functions other than the fan speed, the fan speed will stay set as in automatic mode. Adjustments to the fan speed will cancel Auto Mode.

Defrost and Demist

 **To defrost or demist the windshield on vehicle start up in extreme cold weather conditions, run the engine at 1500 rpm. Always make sure that Neutral (manual) or Park (automatic) is selected and the parking brake is applied.**

Press **MAX** . The outside air intake is automatically selected, the temperature is set to maximum and A/C is started.

 If the engine is cold the A/C will not start up until the engine has started to warm up.

To cancel Automatic defrost or demist either:

- Press **MAX**  again

or

- Press **AUTO**

or

- Press any of the airflow mode buttons

Heating and Cooling

1. Set the required fan speed.
2. Set the required temperature.
3. Select the required air flow.

If dehumidifying is required, press the **A/C** button (button LED ON).

To cease dehumidifying press **A/C** button (button LED OFF).

 When using the air conditioner, mist may come out from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.

 Setting the temperature to maximum high or low will not provide the required temperature at a faster rate. To prevent cool air blowing from the vents when heating immediately after starting a cold engine, the amount of airflow is reduced until the air warms up.

 The vehicle heater will continue to produce the selected temperature regardless of in-vehicle conditions.

 When maximum cooling is required, set the **TEMPERATURE** dial to the extreme cold position and press the **AIR CIRCULATION** button to the re circulated air position ( will show in the **DISPLAY**), then set a fast fan speed.

Defrost and Demist

 **To defrost or demist the windshield on vehicle start up in extreme cold weather conditions, run the engine at 1500 rpm. Always make sure that Neutral (manual) or Park (automatic) is selected and the parking brake is applied.**

1. Press **A/C**.
2. Press the   airflow button.
3. Set the required temperature and fan speed.

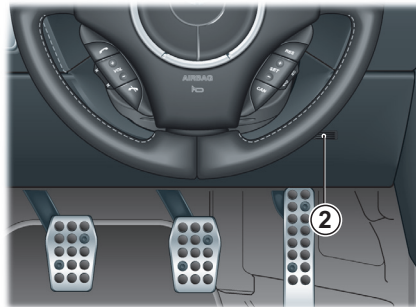
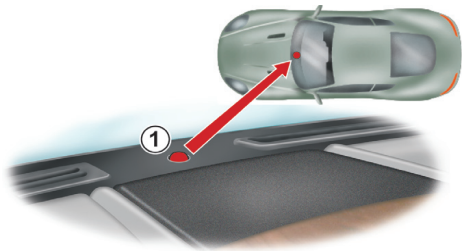
 If the engine is cold the A/C will not start up until the engine has started to warm up.

 For maximum defrost or demist set the temperature and fan speed dials to maximum.

Solar and Temperature Sensors

The automatic air conditioner function measures inside and outside temperatures, and sunlight. It then sets temperatures inside the passenger compartment accordingly. To make sure of effective operation do not obscure the following sensors.

- 1 Solar sensor.
- 2 In-vehicle temperature sensor.



Display Units

To change the **DISPLAY** units from °C to °F or °F to °C.

Press and hold in buttons 1 and 6 (A). Insert the vehicle key in the Ignition Control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON), then release the two buttons.



Audio

Contents

Introduction.....	8.2	Satellite Radio Functions	8.16	CD Changer Functions	8.24
Audio Essentials	8.4	Channels.....	8.18	CD Changer Menu.....	8.27
Aston Martin Audio Sound Settings	8.8	Song Seek and Song Memory.....	8.19	iPod and USB Functions.....	8.28
Bang & Olufsen Audio Sound Settings.....	8.10	Radio Text	8.20	iPod and USB Menu	8.31
Radio Functions.....	8.10	Skip Options.....	8.20	Auxiliary Functions.....	8.32
Programme Type	8.14	Channel Lock.....	8.21	AUX Menu.....	8.34
Automatic Frequency Updating	8.15	Change Code.....	8.22		
Radio Menu.....	8.15	SIRIUS Menu	8.23		

Introduction

The Audio system is an integrated part of the Infotainment system.

Aston Martin Audio System

Radio - AM and FM radio. 10 AM and 20 FM presets.

Satellite Radio (Option)

CD - Six CD autochanger.

Power Output - 700W.

Dolby Pro-Logic II

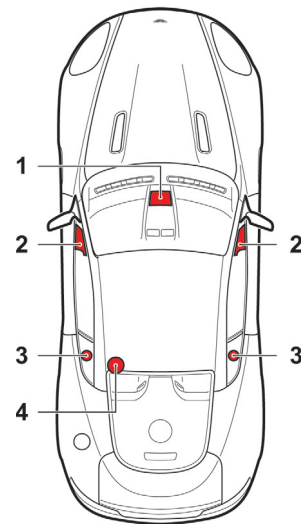
iPod®₁ - Connection port.

USB Device - Connection port.

Auxiliary Input - Connection port.

Speakers

- 1 100W centre-fill speaker.
- 2 Two door-mounted 100W speakers, each with mid-range and tweeter units.
- 3 Two rear environment 100W speakers, each with mid-range and tweeter units.
- 4 200W subwoofer housed under the rear environment left seat.



¹. iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Bang & Olufsen Audio System

Radio - AM and FM radio. 10 AM and 20 FM presets are available.

Satellite Radio (Option)

CD - Six CD autochanger.

iPod₁ - Connection port.

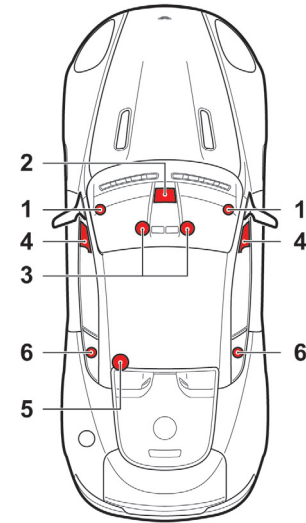
USB Device - Connection port.

Auxiliary Input - Connection port.

Power Output - 974W.

Speakers

- 1 Two ¾ in (19 mm) (soft dome) tweeters incorporating Acoustic Lens Technology (ALT).
- 2 Centre: Two speakers: One 3½ in (90 mm) midrange in closed cabinet and one ¾ in (19 mm) (soft dome) tweeter.
- 3 Footwell: Two 5½ in (140 mm) woofers in closed cabinets.
- 4 Two 3½ in (90 mm) midrange speakers in closed cabinets.
- 5 One 8 in (200 mm) subwoofer housed in closed cabinet under the rear environment left seat.
- 6 Rear environment: Four speakers: One 3½ in (90 mm) midrange + one ¾ in (19 mm) (soft dome) tweeter in each rear quarter.

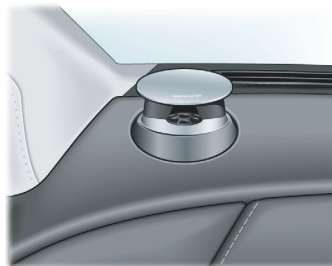


¹. iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Acoustic Lens Technology

Acoustic Lens Technology (ALT) gives a wide (180°) horizontal dispersion of high frequencies. This prevents the loss of critical sound and gives listeners an improved sense of space, staging and realism, even when not sitting in the optimal location¹ for listening to two-channel stereo reproductions.

Two motorized acoustic lenses, mounted on either side of the dashboard, rise when the system is switched ON and stay raised until the Audio system is switched OFF.



Audio Essentials

- 1 **ON/OFF** - Press for audio ON and OFF.
- 2 **VOLUME** - Volume control.
- 3 **KEYPAD** - Use the numbers as menu short-cuts. Press the number corresponding to the menu number.
- 4 **DISPLAY** - Presents options, menus and information.
- 5 **SOUND** - Press and hold to enter sound setting mode. Press repeatedly to move through settings. Rotate to set. When in iPod or USB mode a press and release will enable file viewing.
- 6 **TUNING** - Rotate to navigate through menu options.
- 7 **MENU** - Opens the main menu.
- 8 **AM/FM** - Press to select radio as audio source.

¹. For the optimal location to listen to two-channel stereo reproductions, the listener should be sitting equidistant from both loudspeakers on the apex of an equilateral triangle.



- 9 MODE** - Press repeatedly to select audio source.
- 10 ENTER** - Select in the menu, activate a selection.
- 11 JOYSTICK** - Press up or down to navigate in the menus. Press left or right to set levels when adjusting the Equalizer.
- 12 BACK** - Press to move back one action. Press and hold to move back to the default screen.

Steering Wheel Controls

- 13 VOLUME** - Volume control.

Operation

The audio system is available with the vehicle key at least in position 'I' and stays active until the vehicle key is removed from the Ignition Control.

If the audio system is ON when the ignition is switched OFF and the vehicle key removed, it will automatically start the next time the vehicle key is moved to position 'I'.

Press **ON/OFF** to switch the Audio system ON. Press again to switch the Audio system OFF.

 When the Audio system is switched ON the volume will be at the same level it was when the Audio system was switched OFF.

The **JOYSTICK**, **ENTER** and **BACK** will not operate if Satellite Navigation is active (**NAV** button LED ON) either press:

- The **NAV** button to de-activate Satellite Navigation (**NAV** button LED OFF)
- Or press any Audio button other than **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK**

to access controls for Audio.

 Pressing the **AM/FM** or **MODE** buttons will move the current audio source.

Sound Source

To select radio, at any time while the Audio system is ON, press the **AM/FM** button repeatedly to navigate between the radio bands.

To select other audio sound sources (CD, iPod, USB, AUX, SAT 1 or SAT 2) press the **MODE** button repeatedly to navigate through the sound source choices.

Battery Protection Mode

Using the Audio system, with the vehicle key at position 'I' (ignition OFF) will drain the battery charge. A warning message will show in the message centre (right) when the battery charge is low (Refer to 'Battery Protection Mode', page 11.38).

Menus

The Audio menu is only available when audio is ON. Press **MENU** to access the main menu. The menu for the active audio source (i.e. radio, CD, iPod, etc.) will be available.

Search Path

Menu paths are indicated for each operation in the following format:

<FM Menu...> (Enter) <Advanced radio settings...> (Enter)

 In this chapter when asked to 'Press' a button, this means 'Press and release'. When this is not the case it will be clear in the text.

Several menu options will require a cross in a box  to activate an option. Once the menu item is highlighted press **ENTER** to either place a cross in the box or delete the cross. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.

Active Sound Control

This vehicle has a speed-dependent volume feature known as Active Sound Control (ASC). This adjusts the volume automatically depending on the speed of the vehicle.

Press **MENU** and navigate to sound source menu <AM, FM, CD, iPod, USB, AUX, SAT 1 or SAT 2 menu...> (Enter) <Audio settings...> (Enter) <Auto. volume control>. Select <Low>, <Medium> or <High> (Enter).

Original Settings

Radio Functions

Resets all radio settings to the original factory settings.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <FM Menu...> (Enter) <Advanced radio settings...> (Enter) <Reset all...> (Enter). Press **ENTER** again to confirm.

Sound Settings

Resets all sound settings to the original factory settings:

Press **MENU** and navigate to sound source menu <AM, FM, CD, iPod, USB, AUX, SAT 1 or SAT 2 menu...> (Enter) <Audio settings...> (Enter) <Reset all...> (Enter). Press **ENTER** again to confirm.

Aston Martin Audio Sound Settings

To access sound settings:

- Press and hold **SOUND** to enter sound setting mode. Then press repeatedly until the required sound setting is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

or

- Press **MENU** and navigate to the sound source menu <AM, FM, CD, iPod, USB, AUX, SAT 1 or SAT 2 menu...> (Enter) <Audio Settings...> (Enter) <Sound settings...> (Enter).

Rotate the **TUNING** dial to the desired setting.

 The level for the centre speaker can only be set if either Dolby Pro-Logic II or 3 Channel has been selected from the sound source menu.

Bass - Level for Bass

Treble - Level for Treble

Fader - Balance between the front and rear speakers

Balance - Balance between the left and right speakers

Surround - Level for surround sound

Subwoofer - Level for subwoofer

Centre - Level for centre speaker

Surround - Level for surround sound

Setting the Surround Sound

Press **MENU** and navigate to the sound source menu <AM, FM, CD, iPod, USB, AUX, SAT 1 or SAT 2 menu...> (Enter) <Audio Settings...> (Enter) <Surround (AM, FM, CD, iPod, AUX, SAT 1 or SAT 2)...> (Enter). Select <Dolby Pro-Logic II>, <3 Channel> or <Off> (Enter).

Press and hold **BACK** to return to the main display.

The symbol for Dolby Pro-Logic II is shown on the **DISPLAY** if <Dolby Pro-Logic II> is selected. '3CH' is shown on the **DISPLAY** if <3 Channel> is selected.

<Off> means the system is in normal stereo mode.

 Dolby Pro-Logic II is not available in Radio mode.

Equalizer

Fine adjustment of the sound from the speakers:

Press **MENU** and navigate to the sound source menu <AM, FM, CD, iPod, USB, AUX, SAT 1 or SAT 2 menu...> (Enter) <Audio Settings...> (Enter) <Equaliser...> (Enter).

Move the **JOYSTICK** left or right to set the level. Use the **JOYSTICK** (up or down) to select the next frequency. Five frequencies can be adjusted.

Press **ENTER** to save any changes and exit. Press **BACK** to exit without saving any changes.

Dolby Surround Pro-Logic II

Dolby Surround Pro-Logic II, with its centre speaker in the dashboard, provides more realistic sound reproduction.

The normal left and right stereo channels are divided into left-centre-right. In addition, ambient surround sound is produced through the rear speaker channels.

Dolby Surround Pro-Logic II and the Dolby icon are trade-marks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. The Dolby Pro-Logic II Surround System is manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.



Not available in Radio mode.



ASTON MARTIN

Bang & Olufsen Audio Sound Settings

To access sound settings press and hold **SOUND** to enter sound setting mode. Then press repeatedly until the required sound setting is shown on the **DISPLAY**. Rotate the **TUNING** dial to the desired setting.

Bass - Level for Bass

Treble - Level for Treble

Fader - Balance between the front and rear speakers

Balance - Balance between the left and right speakers

Surround - Level for surround sound

Sound Focus

The focus of the sound from the Audio system can be optimised for either the Driver or Driver and Passenger.

Select:

Driver - The focus of the sound is optimised for the Driver only.

Front - The focus of the sound is optimised for both the Driver and the Passenger.

Auto - The Audio system automatically detects if Driver only or Driver and Passenger are present.



The Audio system detects seat occupancy by seat belt engagement.

Radio Functions

- 1 ON/OFF** - Audio ON and OFF.
- 2 VOLUME** - Volume control.
- 3 DISPLAY** - Presents options, menus and information.
- 4 TUNING** - Rotate to manually search stations or navigate in the menus.
- 5 TP** - Not used.
- 6 SCAN** - Find and store the strongest stations.
- 7 AUTO** - Automatic station search.
- 8 MENU** - Opens the main menu.
- 9 AM/FM** - Shift between FM1, FM2 and AM.
- 10 ENTER** - Select in the menu, activate a selection.



- 11 JOYSTICK** - Press left or right to auto search the next station. Press and hold left or right to manually select a station. Press up or down to navigate in the menus or preset stations.
- 12 BACK** - Press to navigate back one in the menu. Press and hold to navigate back to the default screen. Cancel a selection.
- 13 KEYPAD** - Set station presets and menu shortcuts.

Steering Wheel Controls

- 14 SCROLL** - Navigate through the preset radio stations.
- 15 VOLUME** - Volume control.

Automatic Tuning

Select FM1, FM2 or AM using the **AM/FM** button. Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) to search for the next strong station.

Press left or right again to initiate a new search.

 *If no stations are found press either button again to cancel.*

Manual Tuning

There are two ways to tune into a station manually.

- Rotate the **TUNING** dial to set the desired frequency.
- Press and hold the **JOYSTICK** left or right.

The frequency rolls slowly in the selected direction and increases speed after a few seconds.

Release the button when the desired frequency appears on the **DISPLAY**. If the frequency needs adjusting, briefly touch one of the arrows.

Storing Stations

10 stations can be stored for FM1, FM2 or AM (a total of 30 stations). To store stations:

Tune to the desired station. Press and hold the **KEYPAD** button (0-9) where the station is to be stored. The sound will be muted for a couple of seconds and 'Station Stored' will show on the **DISPLAY**.

Select a stored station by either pressing a **KEYPAD** (0 to 9) button or use the **SCROLL** button to scroll through the station list.

Autostoring Stations

Up to ten AM or FM stations can be automatically tuned and stored in a separate memory.

Select FM1, FM2 or AM using the **AM/FM** button. Start the search by pressing and holding **AUTO** (more than two seconds).

'Autostoring.' appears on the **DISPLAY** and a number of strong stations (maximum ten) from the selected frequency band are stored in the autostore memory. If there are no stations that are sufficiently strong, 'No AST Found' appears on the **DISPLAY**.

 *If more than ten stations are found, the ten strongest are selected. This function is particularly useful if you are in an area in which you are unfamiliar with the radio stations and their frequencies.*

The stations are stored on the **KEYPAD** (buttons 0-9). When the radio is in autostore mode, 'Autostoring' is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

Return to the ordinary radio mode by pressing and releasing **AUTO** (less than 0.7 seconds). Pressing and releasing either **AUTO** or **BACK** will also cancel Autostoring.

Select an Auto stored station by pressing **AUTO**, then a **KEYPAD** (0 to 9) button or the **SCROLL** button to scroll through the station list.

Automatic Search for Transmitter

'PI seek' appears on the **DISPLAY** when reception is poor for the selected station. The radio automatically searches for the strongest transmission for that station. 'PI seek Back to cancel' is shown on the **DISPLAY** until the station is found.

Scanning

Scanning automatically searches for the next strong FM or AM station signals. When the radio finds a station, scanning pauses for approximately eight seconds, after which it continues.

Select FM or AM with the **AM/FM** button.

Press **SCAN**. 'Scan' appears on the **DISPLAY** and each found station will play for approximately eight seconds. Press **SCAN** or **BACK** to accept the station.

 *If no stations are found press either button again to cancel.*

Programme Type

Use the Programme Type (PTY) function to select between the various programme types.

PTY - ON or OFF

Press **MENU** and navigate to <FM Menu...> (Enter) <PTY...> (Enter) <Show PTY> (Enter).

When active the set station's programme type will be shown on the **DISPLAY**, e.g. Current affairs, Information, Drama, Rock music, etc.

 Not all radio stations have a PTY designation.

Searching for a Specific PTY

Press **MENU** and navigate to <FM Menu...> (Enter) <PTY...> (Enter) <PTY...>. Press **ENTER** for one or more of the listed programme types. The PTY symbol on the **DISPLAY** comes ON up when the first selection is made and the radio is set to stand-by for PTY. Press **BACK** to go back.

Navigate to <FM Menu...> (Enter) <PTY...> (Enter) <Search PTY> (Enter). If the radio finds a station with the selected programme type, this is played.

If a station with the selected programme type can not be found, the **DISPLAY** shows 'No Station Found' and the radio returns to the previous frequency.

PTY is then on stand-by until the selected programme type is broadcast. When this happens, the radio automatically switches to the station broadcasting the selected programme type.

Clear All PTY

Press **MENU** and navigate to <FM Menu...> (Enter) <PTY...> (Enter) <Clear all PTY...> (Enter).

The PTY symbol disappears from the **DISPLAY** and the radio returns to normal mode.

Automatic Frequency Updating

The Automatic Frequency (AF) Updating function is normally activate and makes sure that the radio tunes to the strongest available transmitter.

AF - ON or OFF

Press **MENU** and navigate to <FM Menu...> (Enter)
<Advanced radio settings...> (Enter) <AF> (Enter).

When active 'AF' is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

Radio Menu

Aston Martin Audio

1) FM Menu...

- 1) News
- 2) PTY...
 - 1) Select PTY...
 - 2) Search PTY
 - 1) Clear all PTY...
 - 2) Select PTY station
- 3) Show PTY (ON or OFF)
- 3) Radio text
- 4) Advanced Radio Settings...
 - 1) TP...
 - 1) TP station...
 - 2) TP search
 - 2) News station...
 - 3) AF
 - 4) Regional
 - 5) EON...
 - 6) Reset all...
- 5) Auto. volume control

6) Audio Settings...

- 1) Surround FM...
- 2) Equalizer...
- 3) Auto. volume control
- 4) Sound settings...
- 5) Reset all...

1) AM Menu...

- 1) Audio Settings...
 - 1) Surround AM...
 - 2) Equalizer...
 - 3) Sound settings...
- 4) Auto. volume control
- 5) Reset all...

Bang & Olufsen Audio

1) FM Menu...

- 1) News
- 2) PTY...
 - 1) Select PTY...
 - 2) Search PTY
 - 1) Clear all PTY...
 - 2) Select PTY station
- 3) Show PTY (ON or OFF)
- 3) Radio text
- 4) Advanced Radio Settings...
 - 1) TP...
 - 1) TP station...
 - 2) TP search
 - 2) News station...
 - 3) AF
 - 4) Regional
 - 5) EON...
 - 6) Reset all...
- 5) Auto. volume control...

1) AM Menu...

- 1) Auto. volume control...

Satellite Radio Functions

Audio

- 1 **ON/OFF** - Press for audio ON and OFF.
- 2 **VOLUME** - Volume control.
- 3 **DISPLAY** - Presents options, menus and information.
- 4 **KEYPAD** - Station presets and menu shortcuts.
- 5 **TUNING** - Rotate to manually search stations or navigate in the menus.
- 6 **SOUND** - Press for less than three seconds to display song category menu.
- 7 **SCAN** - Automatic station search.
- 8 **AUTO** - Select radio text.
- 9 **MENU** - Opens the main menu.
- 10 **MODE** - Select SAT 1 or SAT 2.



- 11 **ENTER** - Select in the menu, activate a selection.
- 12 **JOYSTICK** - Press left or right once to move to the next or previous station. Press to navigate in the menus or select preset stations.
- 13 **BACK** - Press to navigate back one in the menu. Press and hold to navigate back to the default screen. Cancel a selection.

Steering Wheel Controls

- 14 **SCROLL** - Navigate the channel list.
- 15 **VOLUME** - Volume control.

SIRIUS ID

The SIRIUS ID is required when contacting the SIRIUS Call Centre. It is used to activate your account and when making any account transactions. The SIRIUS ID is sometimes referred to as the Electronic Serial Number (ESN).

To access the 12 digit SIRIUS ID:

Press MENU and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter)
<Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) <Sirius ID> (Enter).

Selecting Satellite Radio Mode

Press **ON/OFF** to switch ON the audio system. Press **MODE** repeatedly to select SAT 1 or 2.

Activating Satellite Radio

Tune to a satellite channel that has no audio, which means that the channel is unsubscribed and the text 'Call 888-539-SIRIUS to Subscribe' is displayed.

Call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-SIRIUS (7474). When asked for the SIRIUS ID number press **AUTO** to display this number.

'Updating Subscription' will be displayed while the subscription is being updated, after which the **DISPLAY** will return to the normal view.

Selecting a Channel Category

With Audio active, press the **MODE** button repeatedly to select SAT 1 or 2. Press **ENTER** to access the song category menu.

Using the **JOYSTICK** navigate through the list of categories and press **ENTER** to select a category. Move left or right to select a channel. Audio starts after a few seconds.

 The category 'All' is default, which enables you to navigate through the entire list of available satellite channels.

 Channel categories are automatically updated several times a year. This takes approximately two minutes and will interrupt normal broadcasting. A message will be displayed while updating is in progress. Information on channel or feature updates is available at www.sirius.com.

Selecting a Channel

There are three ways of tuning in a channel:

- By pressing and holding the **JOYSTICK** (up or down) or the **SCROLL** button. The scrolling function begins slowly and increases speed after approximately 5 seconds. Release the to listen to the currently tuned channel
- By rotating the **TUNING** dial to navigate through the available channels
- Through direct channel entry

Direct Channel Entry

The SIRIUS satellite channels are numbered consecutively throughout all of the categories.

To access a channel directly:

Press MENU and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter)
<Direct channel entry> (Enter).

Use the **KEYPAD** to enter the channel's number. Press **ENTER**. The radio will tune to this channel, even if it belongs to a category other than the currently selected one.

 The numbers of skipped or locked channels will not be displayed.

 If a channel is locked, the access code must be entered before the channel can be selected (Refer to 'Unlocking a Channel', page 8.21).

Scanning

Press **SCAN** to automatically search through the list of satellite channels.

Storing a Channel

A total of 20 satellite channels can be stored; 10 channels each for SAT 1 and 2. A long press on one of the **KEYPAD** numbers stores the currently tuned channel on that key.

Pressing on a **KEYPAD** number while the radio is in SAT 1 or 2 mode will tune to the preset satellite channel stored on that button, regardless of the currently selected channel category.

Song Seek and Song Memory

The Song Seek and Song Memory functions provide both audio and visual notification when SIRIUS is broadcasting your favorite songs. Song Seek enables you to store the name of the song for future advance notification when that song is being played. The Song Memory feature makes it possible to view all of the current songs that are stored in memory.

Song Memory

Up to ten songs can be saved in the system's memory.

When the song is playing press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Add song to song mem> (Enter).

If a new song is selected when the memory is full, a prompt to delete the last song on the list will show. Press **ENTER** to delete the last song on the list. The remaining songs in the list will move down one position, and the newly added song will be placed at the top of the list.

View Song Memory List

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) <Song memory> (Enter).

Scroll through the song list using the **JOYSTICK**₁. Press the **TUNING** dial twice to delete the song if required.

¹. The **TUNING** dial can also be used.

Song Seek

When a satellite radio channel plays one of the songs stored in the song memory, the listener will be alerted by a text message and an audible signal.

Press **ENTER** to listen to the song or **EXIT** to cancel.

To activate or deactivate the song seek function:

Press **MENU** and navigate to *<Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Song seek> (Enter)*.

When the song has ended, the radio will stay tuned to the channel on which the song was played.

Radio Text

The type of text information displayed about the song currently playing can be changed. Use the **AUTO** button or the menu to display the Artist, Title, Composer, or switch radio text OFF.

Skip Options

This function is used to remove a channel from the list of available channels.

Skip Current Channel

Press **MENU** and navigate to *<Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) <Skip options> (Enter) <Channel Skip List> (Enter)*. Select a category in the list and press **ENTER**.

Skip channels in the list by pressing **ENTER**.

Unskip all Channels

This permanently removes all channels from the skip list and makes them available for selection.

Press **MENU** and navigate to *<Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) <Skip options> (Enter) <Channel Unskip all channels> (Enter)*.

Temporally Unskip all Ch.

This function will temporarily unskip all channels and make them available for selection. The channels stay on the skip list and will again be skipped the next time the ignition is switched ON.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter)
<Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) <Skip options> (Enter)
<Temporally Unskip all Ch.> (Enter).

Channel Lock

Access to specific channels can be restricted (locked). A locked channel will not provide audio, song titles, or artist information. Channels must be unlocked to be available for selection.



All channels are initially unlocked at delivery.

Locking a Channel

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Lock Options> (Enter) <Channel Lock List> (Enter). Enter the channel access code₁ and press **ENTER**. Select a category in the list and press **ENTER**. Lock channels in the list presented by pressing **ENTER**.

The channel is now locked and a checked box will be displayed to indicate this. It will be necessary to enter the channel access code in order to listen to a locked channel.

Unlocking a Channel

A channel's access code₁ is required to unlock a channel.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter)
<Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) <Lock options> (Enter)
<Channel lock list> (Enter).

₁. The default code is 0000. If the code has been forgotten, view the access code (Refer to 'View Access Code', page 8.23).

Unlock all Channels

This removes all channels from the locked list and makes them available for selection.

Press **MENU** and navigate to *<Sirius menu... >(Enter)> Advanced sirius settings... >(Enter)> Lock options >(Enter)> Channel Unlock all channels >(Enter).*

Temporally Unlock All Ch.

This function will temporarily unlock all channels. The channels stay on the locked list and will again be locked the next time the ignition is switched ON.

Press **MENU** and navigate to *<Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) <Lock options> (Enter) <Temporary unlock all ch.> (Enter).*

Change Code

This function makes it possible to change the channel access code. The default code is 0000.

To change the code:

Press **MENU** and navigate to *<Sirius menu...> (Enter) <Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) <Lock options> (Enter) <Change Code> (Enter).* Enter the current code and press **ENTER**.

Enter the new code and press **ENTER**. Confirm the new code and press **ENTER**.

If an incorrect code is entered, the text 'Incorrect Code!' is displayed.

View Access Code

If the access code has been forgotten:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Sirius menu...> (Enter)

<Advanced sirius settings...> (Enter) <Sirius ID> (Enter).

Press and hold **ENTER** for two seconds. The current code will be displayed.

Your Aston Martin dealer can also provide you with assistance.

SIRIUS Menu

Aston Martin Audio

1) SIRIUS menu...

- 1) Add song to memory
- 2) Direct channel entry
- 3) SIRIUS radio text
- 4) Song seek
- 5) Advanced SIRIUS settings...
 - 1) Song memory
 - 2) Skip options
 - 1) Channel skip list
 - 2) Unskip all channels
 - 3) Temporally unskip all ch.
 - 3) Lock options
 - 1) Channel lock list
 - 2) Unlock all channels
 - 3) Temporally unlock all ch.
 - 4) Change code
- 4) SIRIUS ID

6) Audio settings...

- 1) Surround SIRIUS...
- 2) Equalizer...
- 3) Auto volume control...
- 4) Reset all

Bang & Olufsen Audio

1) SIRIUS menu...

- 1) Add song to memory
- 2) Direct channel entry
- 3) SIRIUS radio text
- 4) Song seek
- 5) Advanced SIRIUS settings...
 - 1) Song memory
 - 2) Skip options
 - 1) Channel skip list
 - 2) Unskip all channels
 - 3) Temporally unskip all ch.
 - 3) Lock options
 - 1) Channel lock list
 - 2) Unlock all channels
 - 3) Temporally unlock all ch.
 - 4) Change code
- 4) SIRIUS ID
- 5) Auto volume control...
- 6) Reset all

CD Changer Functions

Audio

- 1 **ON/OFF** - Audio ON and OFF.
- 2 **VOLUME** - Volume control.
- 3 **DISPLAY** - Presents options, menus and information.
- 4 **KEYPAD** - Buttons 1- 6 to select CD and menu shortcuts.
- 5 **TUNING** - Rotate to manually change CD tracks or navigate in the menu.
- 6 **TP** - Not used.
- 7 **SCAN** - 10 seconds of each track is played. Press once again to select a track.
- 8 **MENU** - Opens the main menu.
- 9 **MODE** - Select CD.



- 10 **ENTER** - Select in the menu, activate a selection.
- 11 **JOYSTICK** - Press left or right to move to the next or previous track. Press left or right and hold to search within a track or the whole CD. The search continues as long as the Joystick is pressed. Press up or down to navigate in the menus.
- 12 **BACK** - Press to navigate back one in the menu, press and hold to navigate back to the default screen. Cancel a selection.
- 13 Opening for CD.
- 14 **EJECT** - Eject CD.

Steering Wheel Controls

- 15 **SCROLL** - Navigate through the music tracks.
- 16 **VOLUME** - Volume control.

⚠ ***Use only 4 3/4 in (12 cm). CDs. Do not use CDs with adhesive disc labels. The heat from the CD player can cause the label to come loose from the disc. The CD player could be damaged.***

⚠ ***Do not use CDs that are warped or appear warped (critical measurement for CD warp is 0.03 in (0.7 mm) - anything more than this may cause problems). The CD player will not be able hold the CD correctly (because of the warp), this may cause a jam in the CD player.***

📖 *If the quality of the CD does not comply with the requirements of standard EN60908 or if it has been recorded using poor equipment, sound quality may be poor or playback interrupted.*

Loading CDs

The CD changer can hold up to six discs.

Press the **MODE** button repeatedly to select CD. Select an empty position using the **KEYPAD** (buttons 1 to 6) or use the **JOYSTICK** (up or down). The **DISPLAY** shows which positions are empty. Insert a CD into the changer.

Make sure that 'Insert disc' is displayed before inserting a new disc.

Selecting a CD

Select the CD to play using **KEYPAD** buttons 1-6 or the **JOYSTICK** (up or down). The number of the disc and track are shown on the **DISPLAY**.

Changing Tracks

Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right), the **SCROLL** button, or rotate the **TUNING** dial to play the next or previous track. The track number is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

Fast Forward or Reverse

Press and hold the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) to search forwards or backwards within a track or the whole disc. Searching continues for as long as the button is depressed.

Random Play

Plays tracks from a CD or CDs in random order.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <CD Menu...> (Enter) <Random...> (Enter) Select <Off>, <Single disc> or <All discs> (Enter) for the player to randomly choose from none, one or all CDs.

'RND' or 'RND ALL' is shown on the **DISPLAY** while the function is active. Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) or **SCROLL** button to select the next or previous random track.

Press **BACK** to deactivate random play.

Scan

Press **SCAN** to play the first ten seconds of each track. While a scan is in progress press **SCAN** again or **BACK** to play a track.

Pause Mode

When the volume is at zero, play will pause. Reactivate play by turning up the volume.

Disc Text - ON or OFF

Some CDs have title information. The information is displayed as text on the **DISPLAY**.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <CD Menu...> (Enter) <Disc text> (Enter).

If information is stored on the disc, this is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

Ejecting one CD

Press **EJECT**.

 *For traffic safety reasons, the CD stays out for 12 seconds. The player will then draw back in the disc and switch to pause mode. Press CD to reactivate the player.*

Ejecting all CDs

Press and hold **EJECT** (for longer than two seconds). The entire magazine is emptied, CD by CD. 'Eject all' is shown on the **DISPLAY**.

 *This function can only be activated when the vehicle is stationary and is interrupted if the vehicle starts to move. For traffic safety reasons, the ejected CD stays out for 12 seconds. It must then be removed, or the function is cancelled.*

Aston Martin Audio

1) CD Menu...

- 1) Random...
- 1) Off
- 2) Single disc
- 3) All discs
- 2) News
- 3) Disc text
- 4) Audio Settings...
 - 1) Surround CD...
 - 2) Equalizer...
 - 3) Auto. volume control...
 - 4) Sound settings...
 - 5) Reset all

Bang & Olufsen Audio

1) CD Menu...

- 1) Random...
- 1) Off
- 2) Single disc
- 3) All discs
- 2) News
- 3) Disc text
- 4) Auto. volume control...

iPod and USB Functions

Audio

- 1 **ON/OFF** - Press for audio ON and OFF.
- 2 **VOLUME** - Volume control.
- 3 **DISPLAY** - Presents options, menus and information.
- 4 **KEYPAD** - Buttons 0 – 9 track selection and menu shortcuts.
- 5 **TUNING** - Rotate to manually to change tracks or navigate in the menus.
- 6 **TP** - Not used.
- 7 **SCAN** - 10 seconds of each track is played. Press once again to select a track.
- 8 **MENU** - Opens the main menu.
- 9 **MODE** - Select USB, iPod.



- 10 **ENTER** - Open the file system, select in the menu, activate a selection.
- 11 **JOYSTICK** - Press left or right to move to the next track or previous. Press left or right and hold to search within a track or the whole music folder. The search continues as long as the Joystick is pressed. Press up or down to navigate in the menus.
- 12 **BACK** - Press to move back one action. Press and hold to move back to the default screen.

Steering Wheel Controls

- 13 **SCROLL** - Navigate through the music tracks.
- 14 **VOLUME** - Volume control.

iPod and USB Connection

Locate the iPod cable or the USB socket in the armrest cubby box.

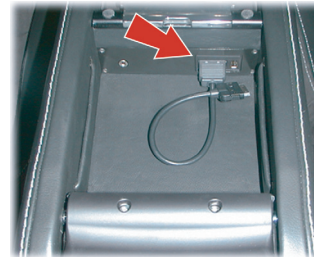
Connect the iPod player cable to the iPod cable.

or

Connect the USB device to the USB port.

If not already ON, switch ON the audio system.

Repeatedly press the **MODE** button until either 'iPod' or 'USB' shows on the **DISPLAY**.



The iPod or USB device can now be operated by the Infotainment system.

 *The iPod controls will not operate while connected to the vehicle audio system. All functionality will be from the vehicle Audio system.*

 *The iPod port is compatible with generation three iPods onwards.*

 *The USB port is only compatible with USB storage devices, e.g. Memory Sticks.*

 *On initial connection and on every engine start the system will synchronize with the connected device. This will take a short while to complete.*

Playing Tracks

Once the mode has been set to either iPod or USB play automatically start.

Selecting Tracks

Press **ENTER** to display the music folder list. Using the **JOYSTICK** (up or down) or the **TUNING** dial navigate through the folder list or music tracks. Press **ENTER** to open a folder or play a track.

Pause Mode

When the volume is at zero, play will pause. Reactivate play by turning up the volume.

Fast Forward and Rewind

Press and hold down the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) to search within a track or the whole music folder. The search continues as long as the button is depressed.

Changing Tracks

Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right), or the **SCROLL** button, or rotate the **TUNING** dial to play the next or previous track.

Scan

Press **SCAN** to play the first ten seconds of each track. While a scan is in progress press **SCAN** again or **BACK** to play the required track.

Random

Plays tracks from the music folder(s) in random order.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <iPod Menu...> or <USB Menu...> (Enter) <Random...> (Enter). Select <Off>, <Folder> or <All> (Enter) for the player to randomly choose from none, one or all music folders.

'RND' or 'RND ALL' is shown in the **DISPLAY** while the function is active.

Press the **JOYSTICK** (left or right) or the **SCROLL** button to select the next or previous random track.

iPod and USB Menu

Aston Martin Audio

1) iPod Menu..., USB Menu...

- 1) Random...
- 1) Off
- 2) Folder
- 3) All
- 2) News
- 3) Track Information
- 4) Audio Settings...
- 1) Surround iPod or USB...
- 2) Equalizer...
- 3) Auto. volume control...
- 4) Sound settings...
- 5) Reset all

Bang & Olufsen Audio

1) iPod Menu... or USB Menu...

- 1) Random...
- 1) Off
- 2) Folder
- 3) All
- 2) News
- 3) Track Information
- 4) Auto. volume control...



ASTON MARTIN

Auxiliary Functions

Audio



- 1 **ON/OFF** - Press for audio ON and OFF.
- 2 **VOLUME** - Volume control.
- 3 **DISPLAY** - Presents options, menus and information.
- 4 **KEYPAD** - Menu shortcuts.
- 5 **TUNING** - Rotate to navigate in the menus.
- 6 **TP** - Not used.
- 7 **MENU** - Opens the main menu.
- 8 **MODE** - Select AUX.
- 9 **ENTER** - Select in the menu, activate a selection.
- 10 **JOYSTICK** - Press up or down to navigate in the menus.
- 11 **BACK** - Press to move back one action. Press and hold to move back to the default screen.

Steering Wheel Controls

12 **VOLUME** - Volume control.

The auxiliary input socket is provided to connect audio devices which can not be connected using the iPod or USB connections.

When an audio device is connected to the Infotainment system using the auxiliary socket all control of the device will stay with the device.

Audio Device Connection

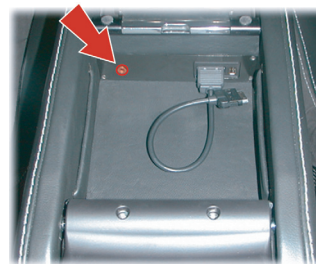
Locate the Auxiliary socket in the armrest cubby box and connect the audio device to the auxiliary socket using a suitable cable.

If not already ON, switch ON the audio system. Repeatedly press the **MODE** button until 'AUX' shows on the **DISPLAY**.

The media device will now play through Infotainment system.



Only volume control will be available from the vehicle audio system. All other functionality will be from the Audio device.



Audio Device Volume

The vehicle audio system volume can be set at a higher or lower starting volume for the audio device.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <AUX menu...> (Enter) <AUX input volume...> (Enter). Rotate the **TUNING** dial to set the volume level.

Press and hold **BACK** to return to the main display.

AUX Menu**Aston Martin Audio****1) AUX Menu...**

- 1) AUX input volume...
- 2) News
- 3) Audio Settings...
 - 1) Surround AUX...
 - 2) Equalizer...
 - 3) Auto. volume control...
 - 4) Sound settings...
 - 5) Reset all

Bang & Olufsen Audio**1) AUX Menu...**

- 1) AUX input volume...
- 2) News
- 3) Auto. volume control...



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Hands-Free Phone

Contents

Introduction.....	9.2	Removing a Paired Phone	9.10
Hands-Free Functions	9.2	Selecting a Phone.....	9.10
Hands-Free Phone Active.....	9.4	Calls.....	9.11
Menus	9.4	Phone Book	9.12
Audio Settings.....	9.5	Voice Mailbox.....	9.13
Connecting a Phone.....	9.6	Last Ten Numbers	9.13
Initial Pairing.....	9.7	Telephone Menu	9.13
Pairing Additional Phones	9.8		

Introduction

A mobile device equipped with Hands-Free (Bluetooth) capability can be connected wirelessly to the vehicle's Hands-Free phone system. The vehicle's Hands-Free phone system then provides remote control of a range of the mobile phone's functions. The mobile phone can always be operated by its own keys regardless of whether or not it is connected.

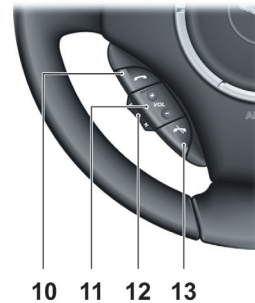
The Hands-Free system is active when the vehicle key is in position 'I' or 'II'. If, during a call, the vehicle key is moved to position '0' or removed the call will transfer to the mobile phone after approximately six seconds.

 **Automatic Transmission Only:** *The Hands-Free phone system uses the internal antenna of the mobile phone. Placing the mobile phone in the trinket tray may degrade the Hands-Free system performance.*

 *The Hands-Free phone system will not recognize a mobile phone, even if it is 'paired' (Refer to page 9.6), if the mobile phone does not have Bluetooth enabled. For more information refer to the user's guide for your mobile phone.*

Hands-Free Functions

- 1 VOLUME** - Volume control.
- 2 DISPLAY** - Presents options, menus and information.
- 3 TUNING** - Navigate through phone book and menus.
- 4 MENU** - Opens the main menu.
- 5 ENTER** - Press to answer or make a call. Select in the menu, activate a selection.
- 6 JOYSTICK** - Navigate in the menus. Move forwards or backwards when entering text and digits.
- 7 PHONE** - Press to activate phone mode. Press and hold to deactivate phone mode.
- 8 BACK** - End a call. Navigate back in the menu. Cancel a selection. Erase the previous character when entering text and numbers.
- 9 KEYPAD** - Search through the phone book. Speed dial. Navigate in the menu.



Steering Wheel Controls

- 10 CALL** - Press to answer a call. Press to return to phone mode from audio when phone mode is active.
- 11 VOLUME** - Volume control during a call.
- 12 SCROLL** - Navigate in the menus.
- 13 CANCEL** - Press to end a call. Press to enter audio mode when phone mode is active.

Hands-Free Phone Active

When the Hands-Free system is active the  symbol will show in the **DISPLAY**. During a call this symbol will change to . When a mobile phone is connected to the Hands-Free system the  symbol will show in the **DISPLAY**.

If, after 30 seconds, the Hands-Free Phone has not been used, the Infotainment system will default to audio functions. Return to Hands-Free Phone functions by pressing **PHONE** or **CALL**.

Menus

The phone menu is only available when the Hands-Free phone system is active. Press **PHONE** to activate. Press **MENU** to access the main menu.

Search Path

Menu paths are indicated for each operation in the following format:

<Phone menu...> (Enter) <Phone settings...> (Enter)
<Sounds and volume...>

 In this chapter when asked to 'Press' a button, this means 'Press and release'. When this is not the case it will be clear in the text.

Several menu options will require a cross in a box  to activate an option. Once the menu item is highlighted press **ENTER** to either place a cross in the box or delete the cross. Then press and hold **BACK** to accept and return to the main screen.

Call Menu

Press **MENU**, **ENTER** or **CALL** during an ongoing call to access the following functions

Mute microphone - The Hands-Free system microphone is muted.

Transfer call to mobile or Transfer call to vehicle - The call can be transferred to or from the mobile phone or the vehicle phone.

Phone book - Access the phone book during a call.

 Some mobile phones will terminate the connection when the privacy function is used. This is normal. The vehicle system asks if you want to reconnect.

Audio Settings

Call Volume

During a call the call volume can be regulated using the **VOLUME** dial or button.

Audio System Volume

The audio source can be automatically muted for incoming calls:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter)
<Phone settings...> (Enter) <Sounds and volume...> (Enter)
<Mute radio> (Enter) to activate or deactivate.

If mute radio is deactivated switch to one of the audio sources to control the audio system volume during an ongoing call.

Audio System Control

Not during a call.

While in Phone mode press **CANCEL** to return to the audio source. The steering wheel controls will then operate the audio volume and preset station or music track selection.

When the audio source is active while Phone mode is active press **CALL** to return to Phone mode.

Ring Volume

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter)
<Phone settings...> (Enter) <Sounds and volume...> (Enter)
<Ring volume> (Enter). Adjust using the **TUNING** dial.

Ring Signals

The vehicle system has integrated ring signals that can be selected:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter)
<Phone settings...> (Enter) <Sounds and volume...> (Enter)
<Ring signal> (Enter) <Select Ring signal 1, 2, 3 etc.> (Enter).



The connected mobile phone's ring signal is not deactivated when one of the vehicles integrated signals is used.

Connecting a Phone

A connection between the vehicle Hands-Free system and a mobile phone is called a 'Paired Link'. When a paired link is set up the Hands-Free system remembers the mobile phone's ID.

Once the Hands-Free system and the mobile phone are paired, the Hands-Free system automatically connects every time the ignition is switched ON if the Hands-Free system is active (Press **PHONE** to activate) on the vehicle and the mobile phone.

A mobile phone can be paired either using the vehicle Hands-Free system or by using the mobile phone.

This system supports paired links with up to five phones.



The process of initiating a Hands-Free connection with a phone varies per phone manufacturer. For more information refer to the user's guide for your mobile phone.

Disconnecting

The mobile phone will **automatically** disconnect when it moved out of the Hand-Free system's range or Bluetooth is made unavailable on the mobile phone.

The mobile phone will **manually** disconnect when the Hands-Free system is deactivated. Press and hold **PHONE** until  disappears from the **DISPLAY**. The function is also deactivated when the ignition is switched OFF.

If the mobile phone has been disconnected during an ongoing call, the call will transfer to the mobile phone.



Some mobile phones require that the transfer is confirmed from the phone's keypad.

Initial Pairing

Use this procedure when pairing the first mobile phone to the Hands-Free system.

Press **PHONE** to activate the Hands-Free system.

The **DISPLAY** will show 'No Paired Phones. Press **ENTER** to Add a Phone. Press **EXIT** to cancel.' Press **ENTER**.

The Hands-Free system will ask if Bluetooth is in discoverable mode (refer to the mobile phone manufacturers instructions). If yes press **ENTER**. After a short while a list of phones which are in range and in discoverable mode will be displayed.

 If the  symbol is showing in the **DISPLAY** when the ignition is ON, initial pairing can be completed using the mobile phone (Refer to 'Pairing Using the Mobile Phone', page 9.9).

Press the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button or rotate the **TUNING** dial to navigate to the required mobile phone and press **ENTER**.

The **DISPLAY** will then ask for a passkey to be entered into the mobile phone. The mobile phone will prompt for the passkey. Enter the passkey into the mobile phone.

The **DISPLAY** will show 'Phone Connecting...' then, if successful, 'Synchronizing'.

Once synchronizing has completed the mobile phone is ready for use.

 If the passkey is not entered after 20 seconds the screen will time-out.

 Synchronizing automatically places all the mobile phone contacts onto the vehicle system. This function can be deactivated (Refer to 'Phone Book', page 9.12)

Pairing Additional Phones

Pairing Using the Hands-Free System

 *Disconnect any in use phones before pairing additional phones. If a phone is connected to the Hands-Free system pairing a new phone will not be possible until the Hands-Free system has no active Bluetooth connections.*

 *If, after 30 seconds, the Hands-Free Phone has not been used, the Infotainment system will default to audio functions. Return to Hands-Free Phone functions by pressing **PHONE** or **CALL**.*

Check that the mobile phone has Bluetooth active and visible. Check that the Hands-Free system is active ( symbol will show in the **DISPLAY**).

The Hands-Free system automatically searches for the last used phone. If the last used phone is not found a list of paired phones will be displayed along with <Add phone>. Select <Add phone> to pair a new phone to the system.

 *If the last used phone is found press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone Menu...> (Enter) <Bluetooth...> (Enter) <Change phone...> (Enter) <Add Phone...>.*

Press **ENTER**. The Hands-Free system will asked if Bluetooth is in discoverable mode (refer to the mobile phone manufactures instructions). If yes press **ENTER**. After a short while a list of phones which are in range and in dicscoverable mode will be displayed.

Press the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button or rotate the **TUNING** dial to navigate to the required mobile phone and press **ENTER**.

The **DISPLAY** will then ask for a passkey to be entered into the mobile phone. The mobile phone will prompt for the passkey. Enter the passkey into the mobile phone.

 *If the passkey is not entered after 20 seconds the screen will time-out.*

The **DISPLAY** will show 'Phone Connecting...' then, if successful, 'Synchronizing'. Once synchronizing has completed the mobile phone is ready for use.

 *Synchronizing automatically places all the mobile phone contacts onto the Hands-Free system. This function can be deactivated (Refer to 'Phone Book', page 9.12)*

Pairing Using the Mobile Phone

 *Disconnect any in use phones before pairing additional phones. If a phone is connected to the Hands-Free system pairing a new phone will not be possible until the Hands-Free system has no active Bluetooth connections.*

Check that the Hands-Free system is active ( symbol will show in the **DISPLAY**).

Follow the mobile phone manufactures instructions to search and connect to a new bluetooth device. The phone will search for discoverable Bluetooth devices in its range.

Select 'ASTON MARTIN' from the device list. The phone will prompt for a passkey.

Press **MENU** (on the vehicle) and move to <Phone menu...> (Enter) <Bluetooth...> (Enter) <Connect from Mobile Phone> (Enter). The **DISPLAY** will then show a passkey, enter the passkey into the mobile phone.

The **DISPLAY** will show 'Phone Connecting...' then, if successful, 'Synchronizing'.

Once synchronizing has completed the mobile phone is ready for use.

 *If 'ASTON MARTIN' does not appear check that the Hands-Free system is active and search again.*

 *If the passkey is not entered after 20 seconds the screen will time-out.*

 *Synchronizing automatically places all the mobile phone contacts onto the vehicle system. This function can be deactivated (Refer to 'Phone Book', page 9.12)*

Removing a Paired Phone

Using the Hands-Free system

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter) <Bluetooth...> (Enter) <Remove Phone> (Enter).

A list of paired phones will be displayed. Navigate to the required phone and press **ENTER** to delete or **BACK** to cancel.

Selecting a Phone

Using the Mobile Phone

If not active, press **PHONE** to activate the Hands-Free system.

Using the Mobile phone, follow the manufacturer's instructions to search and connect to a Bluetooth device. The phone will search for discoverable Bluetooth devices in its range. Select 'ASTON MARTIN' from the device list.

Select Connect.

 *The phone to be selected must have Bluetooth active, visible and in close proximity to the Hands-Free phone system.*

 *If 'ASTON MARTIN' does not appear check that the Hands-Free system is active and search again. If 'ASTON MARTIN' still does not appear the mobile phone may not be paired (Refer to 'Pairing Additional Phones', page 9.8).*

Using the Vehicle Hands-Free system

With the Hands-Free system already active, press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone Menu...> (Enter) <Bluetooth...> (Enter) <Change Phone> (Enter). A list of paired phones will be displayed (along with *Add phone*). Navigate to the required phone and press **ENTER** to change or **BACK** to cancel.

Or

Press **PHONE** to activate the Hands-Free system. The system will then scan for the last used mobile phone. If found and it is the mobile required then press **ENTER**. If the last phone is not found the **DISPLAY** will show a list of paired phones within range (with Bluetooth active). Navigate to a phone and press **ENTER** to select that phone.

Making a Call

Press **PHONE**, or **CALL** on the steering wheel controls.

- Press the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button, or rotate the **TUNING** dial to select a contact from the phone book. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call.

Or

- Dial the number using the keypad and press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call. Press **BACK** to delete a number. Press and hold **BACK** to delete the whole number.

Ending Calls

To end a call press **CANCEL** or **BACK**.

Reject a Call

Press **CANCEL** or **BACK** while the phone is ringing.

Calling Using Voice Recognition

If the mobile phone supports voice dialling:

Press, hold and release **CALL** or **ENTER**. The amount of time require to hold in **CALL** or **ENTER** is dependant on the mobile phone.

Once 'Voice Tag Dialling' shows on the **DISPLAY**, allow one to two seconds before saying a name. The vehicle system will call the contact.

Receiving Calls

To answer an incoming call press **CALL** or **ENTER**.

Automatic Answer

The automatic answer function means that calls are accepted automatically after four rings.

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter)
<Phone settings...> (Enter) <Call options...> (Enter)
<Automatic answer> (Enter) to activate or deactivate.

Phone Book

The mobile phone's phone book is synchronized automatically to the vehicle system at each connection.

If it is not required to synchronize to phone book:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter) <Phone settings...> (Enter) <Synchronizing phone book> (Enter) to activate or deactivate

If the phone book contains a caller's contact information, this is shown in the **DISPLAY**.



If the mobile phone does not support copying of the phone book, 'List is empty' is shown when copying is finished.

Contact Search

Searching for contacts is only performed in the connected mobile phone's phone book. Either:

Press the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button, or rotate the **TUNING** dial to bring up the contact list. Navigate to the contact. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call.

Or

Use the **KEYPAD** to search the phone book. Press and hold a key (2 to 9) which relates to the first letter of the contact's name. This starts a search in the phone book based on the key's first letter. Navigate to the contact. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call.

Or

Press **PHONE**. Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter) <Phone book...> (Enter) <Search> (Enter).

Using the **KEYPAD**, enter the first few letters of the contact name, press **ENTER**.

Navigate to a contact. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call.

Voice Mailbox

To enter a voice mailbox number:

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter)
<Phone settings...> (Enter) <Call options...> (Enter) <Voice
mail number> (Enter) <Enter the number> (Enter).

Or

Press and hold **KEYPAD** number 1 to go to <Voice mail
number>. Enter the number and press **ENTER**. Use the stored
number by pressing 1 for several seconds.

To change the voice mail number go to *Voice mail number*.
Press and hold **BACK** to delete the whole number or press
and release to delete individual numbers. Once the number
has been deleted then enter a new number.

 If the mobile phone has the voice mail number already
stored then this will be placed into the system when
synchronizing during pairing.

Last Ten Numbers

Last Ten Dialed Numbers

Press **ENTER**. Use the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL**
button, or rotate the **TUNING** dial to navigate to the required
number. Press **CALL** or **ENTER** to call that number.

Last Ten Missed and Received Numbers

Press **MENU** and navigate to <Phone menu...> (Enter) <Last
10 missed calls> or <Last 10 received calls> (Enter).

Use the **JOYSTICK** (up or down), **SCROLL** button, or rotate
the **TUNING** dial to navigate to the required number. Press
CALL or **ENTER** to call that number.



Last ten dialed will also be available.

Telephone Menu

1) Phone Menu...

- 1) Last 10 missed calls
- 2) Last 10 received calls
- 3) Last 10 dialed calls
- 4) Phone book...
 - 1) Search
 - 2) Copy fr. mobile phone
- 5) Bluetooth...
 - 1) Change Phone...
 - 2) Remove Phone
 - 3) Connect from mobile phone
- 6) Phone settings...
 - 1) Call options...
 - 1) Automatic answer
 - 2) Voice mail number
 - 2) Sounds and volume...
 - 1) Ring volume
 - 2) Ring signals...
 - 3) Mute Radio
 - 3) Synchronizing phone book



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Satellite Navigation

Contents

Introduction.....	10.2	Avoid Specific Areas.....	10.27
Getting Started.....	10.4	Information.....	10.29
Easy Mode Settings	10.9	Current Position	10.29
Using Easy Mode	10.10	Quick Menus	10.29
Advanced Mode Settings.....	10.14	Map View	10.31
Using Advanced Mode.....	10.17	Map Scroll.....	10.32
Store a Destination	10.23	Map symbols.....	10.34
Itinerary	10.25	Frequently Asked Questions.....	10.35

Introduction

The Satellite Navigation system is an integrated part of the Infotainment centre system along with the audio system.

This Navigation system has been developed to help guide you to the destination of your choice. The system includes features that enable you to set itineraries, search for certain types of points of interest along your route, store special destinations, etc.

The navigation system can be used without a destination being selected. The map with the position of your vehicle is shown on the **SCREEN** and your vehicle is shown with a blue triangle.

Warnings

**** Never use the navigation system or any other feature in the vehicle in a way that distracts you from the task of driving safely.***

**** Distraction can lead to a serious accident.***

**** Set and make changes in the navigation system only with the vehicle parked.***

**** Be aware of the current traffic situation.***

 ***Always use good judgment when following navigation system guidance, and do not follow guidance that seems contrary to your own best judgment. Never use the navigation system or any other feature in your vehicle in a way that distracts you from the task of driving safely. Distraction can lead to a serious accident. Set and make changes in your navigation system only with the vehicle parked. Be aware of the current traffic situation. Always comply with relevant traffic regulations.***

Two modes of operation are available:

Easy Mode - Provides basic straightforward functionality to enable the user to select a destination.

Advanced mode - Provides all system functionality.

The Navigation system has all maps and features, for the market area, installed in the vehicle's electronic memory.

A DVD player is provided to install map and feature up-dates as and when available (Refer to 'Map Updates', page 10.3).

The locations used in this chapter do not necessarily reflect known places and are for the purpose of describing operating procedures only.

Global Positioning System

The vehicle's speed sensor and a gyro calculate the current position and the direction of travel of the vehicle using signals from the Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite system.

Screen Care

The **SCREEN** must only be cleaned with a soft, lint free, dampened cloth, or a cloth with a mild window cleaning agent.

Map Updates

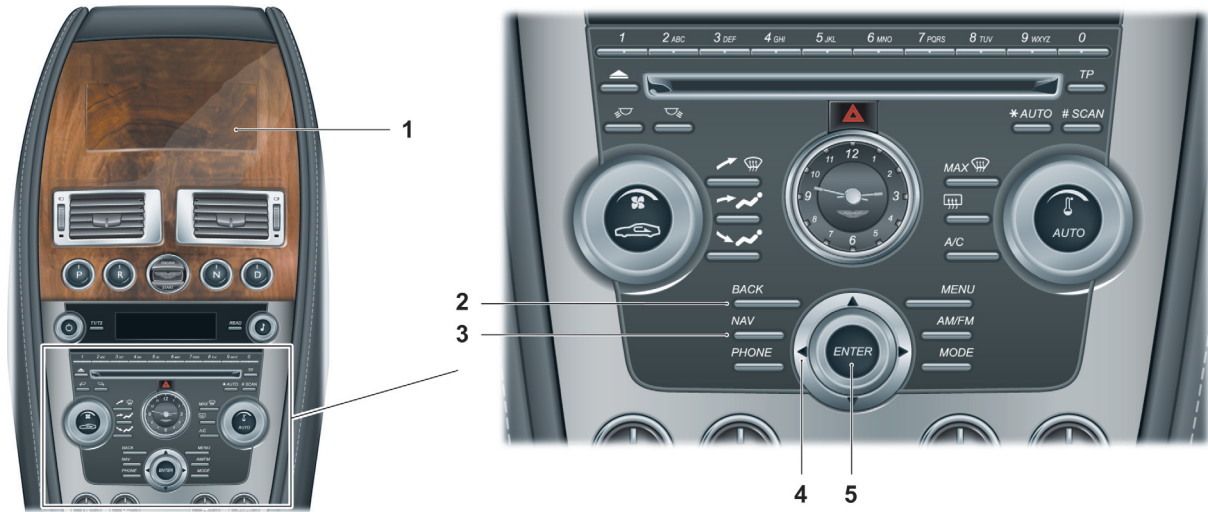
Factors such as the constant expansion and rebuilding of the road network, new traffic regulations constantly being introduced etc. means that the digital map database is not always up-to-date. Digital maps are continuously updated and the coverage is increased gradually.

Map updates are available on DVD. For information on the latest versions and installation of Map DVDs, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Getting Started

System Controls

- 1 **SCREEN** - Displays maps and provides detailed information on route type, distance, etc.
- 2 **BACK** - Press to return to the previous menu or to undo a choice.
- 3 **NAV** - Press to enable or disable Satellite Navigation controls.
- 4 **JOYSTICK** - Navigate through different menu options, etc.
- 5 **ENTER** - Press to confirm, select or navigate from one submenu to the next submenu.



Switch the Navigation System ON

The vehicle key must be at position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control.

1. Press the **NAV** button (button LED ON).
2. Press **ENTER**. The navigation screen will open. On start up the **SCREEN** will show the option of running the Navigation system in Easy or Advanced mode.

Select <Easy> or <Advanced> using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**. The user mode can be changed at any time in the system setup menu.

The **SCREEN** defaults to Map view.

 *The system may need a few seconds to detect your position and movement.*

While the **NAV** button LED is ON the **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK** functions only operate the Navigation system.

To use the **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK** functions for Audio or Phone functions either:

- Press the **NAV** button again (button LED OFF).
- or
- Press any Audio button other than **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK**.

Press **NAV** (button LED ON) again to return to Navigation controls.

 *Pressing the **AM/FM** or **MODE** buttons will move the current audio source.*

Switch the Navigation System OFF

 *If in map mode press the **BACK** to view the main menu.*

1. From the main menu move to <Shutdown> and press **ENTER**. The navigation screen will close after a few seconds.
- Press the **NAV** button (button LED OFF) or press any Audio button other than **BACK**, **ENTER** and **JOYSTICK** to return functions back to Audio.

 *The Navigation system can be accessed even if the ignition is switched OFF. Always switch the ignition OFF or remove the vehicle key when the system is not in use so the battery does not become discharged.*



If the Navigation system is still active when the vehicle key is removed the system will shut down. When the vehicle key is inserted again and placed at position 'I' or 'II' the Navigation system will start up automatically. Press the **NAV** button to activate Navigation controls.

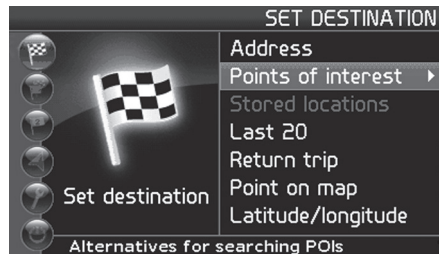
Main Menu

The main screen provides access to system functions. While in the default screen (Map view) press **BACK**. Using the **JOYSTICK** select a menu option and then move right or press **ENTER** to access the functions.

The Navigation menu is only available when the **NAV** button LED is ON.



When asked to 'Press' a button, this means 'Press and release'. When this is not the case it will be clear in the text.



Easy Menu

Set destination

Show destination^a

Remove destination^a

Settings

Shut down

Advanced Menu

Set destination

Itinerary^a

Next destination^a

Current position

Settings

Shut down

^a. Available when a destination is entered.

Search path

Menu paths are indicated for each operation in the following format:

<Set destination> (Enter) **<Address>** (Enter)

Menu selections in the text are indicated by **<All Cities>**.

Quick Menus



Press **ENTER** while in Map view to access the Quick menus. Select a Quick menu using the **JOYSTICK**. Select an option and press **ENTER**.

(Refer to 'Quick Menus', page 10.29).

Quick menus make it easier to access certain system options.

 *Some options are only accessible through the Quick menus (Refer to 'Quick Menus', page 10.29).*

Guidance Voice

With Audio ON - If guidance is active, when guidance is provided the audio system will mute until the guidance message has finished.

Phone in Use - If guidance is active, guidance messages will be muted if the Hands-Free phone system is in use.

 *If a guidance message is broadcast during a phone call an audible 'Beep' will sound.*

Demo (Guidance Simulation)

Advanced Mode Only

<Settings> (Enter) **<Start demo>** (Enter)

The demo illustrates how the system works when the vehicle is stationary by simulating a trip to a specified destination. All settings can be made during the demonstration. Select **<Stop demo>** to stop the simulation.

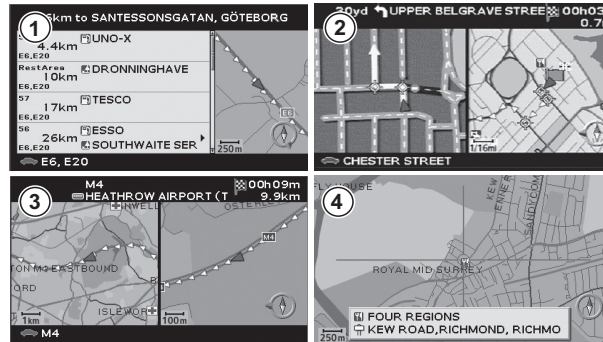
 *A destination must be entered for the demo to work.*

Screen Display

The screen display is determined by factors such as geographic location and settings that have been made, such as map scale, the symbols selected to be displayed, etc. (Refer to 'Map symbols', page 10.34).

1. On a Highway - The screen will display the points of interest along the highway. This function is available even if a destination has not been selected. A scroll list at the right indicates that there are additional alternatives.

2. Detailed Map Showing Intersections - The screen will display lanes on the road to help you select the correct one at the next intersection. This function is only available on major roads. Voice guidance is also always provided.



3. Two Maps Have Been Selected in Settings - Both sections of the screen display the same map, but with different scales (Refer to 'Map View', page 10.31).

4. Map Scroll Mode - (Refer to 'Map Scroll', page 10.32).

Unverified Roads

A small number of roads in the system may be unverified. This means that information on signs, one-way streets, left turns, etc., may not be accurate. An itinerary containing unverified roads will be displayed with gray arrows instead of the usual yellow ones. The system provides information when an unverified road is added to an itinerary and when the vehicle begins to travel on one of these roads.

Compass

The red tip of the compass needle points in a northerly direction on the map. The destination arrow in the outer ring of the compass points in the direction of the destination.

Under *<Map options>* on the Settings menu you can choose to show or hide the compass and destination arrow.



Easy Mode Settings

System Settings

<Settings> (Enter)

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings made using **ENTER**.

<Guiding voice> - A male or a female guiding voice can be selected.

<Guiding volume> - Guiding voice volume.

<Language> - Indicate the language to be used in the system.

<Color> - Select *<Black>*, *<Blue>*, *<Dark>* or *<Chrome>*.

<Map view> - Select to view either a 2D or 3D map.

<Distance unit> - Select *<US miles>* or *<km>*.

<User mode> - Select *<Easy>* or *<Advanced>*. All destinations will be deleted if changing operating modes.

Using Easy Mode

The Navigation system requires a destination to be entered so that a route to the destination can then be calculated. In Easy mode only one destination can be entered at a time.



*If the **SCREEN** is in map view press **BACK** to access the main menu.*

Destination by an Address

<Set Destination> (Enter) **<Address>** (Enter)

<Number> will be highlighted and the last selected State and City will be remembered.

If searching for a destination outside the current State move to **<State>** and press **ENTER**.

SET DESTINATION	
State:	NEW YORK
City:	NEW YORK
Type:	<All types>
Name:	<All names>
Select type of point of interest	

Use the **JOYSTICK** to spell out the desired State from the Character table. Press **ENTER** for each letter.



When there are no more alternatives, the system fills in the missing letters itself.

A list of States matching that letter combination is shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**. A scroll bar on the right indicates that there are several alternatives in the list. The number indicates how many.

Using the **JOYSTICK** move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, return to the Character table by pressing **BACK**. Press **BACK** to delete the entered letters one at a time.

Select City

Move to <City> and press **ENTER**.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to spell out the desired City from the Character table. Press **ENTER** for each letter.



When there are no more alternatives, the system fills in the missing letters itself.

A list of Cities matching that letter combination is shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**. A scroll bar on the right indicates that there are several alternatives in the list. The number indicates how many.

Using the **JOYSTICK** move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, return to the Character table by pressing **BACK**. Press **BACK** to delete the entered letters one at a time.

Select Street

Move to <Street> and press **ENTER**. Select as described for select City.



It is also possible to search for street addresses throughout the State without specifying a particular City.



Street addresses are not stored in the system for some small towns. The town centre, however, can always be specified as the destination.

Once a Street has been selected it is then possible to move to <Start Guide>.

When <Start guide> is selected, the system begins calculating the route and distance to the destination (during this time, a yellow symbol is shown at the top of the **SCREEN**). If a detour is made from the planned route during the trip, the system automatically calculates a new route.



If neither a street number or an intersecting street is specified the system guides to the middle of the street chosen.

Select Street Number or Intersection

If the street number of the selected address is known, it can also be entered to make guidance more exact. An intersecting street can also be entered instead of the street number.

Move to <Number> and press **ENTER**. Existing street numbers are then displayed. Select a number using the **JOYSTICK** (right or left) and press **ENTER**.

Once a valid number has been entered move to:

<**Set**> - Confirm entered number.

<**Cancel**> - Go back to the previous screen.

Move to <Interse> and press **ENTER**.

The roads that intersect the selected street are shown in a list. Select from among the streets and press **ENTER**.

Destination by a Zip Code

Using the **JOYSTICK** move to <City> and press **ENTER**.

Move to <Zip code> and press **ENTER**.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to select the desired letters and numbers from the character table and press **ENTER**. Move down and select a Zip Code from the list. Press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, press **BACK** to return to the table of characters. Press **BACK** to delete entered characters.



In some States the entire Zip Code cannot be specified.

Move to <Street> and press **ENTER**. Choose letters using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER** or move down and choose a street name directly from the list if options are available.

Then move to <Number> or <Interse> to specify a street number or a crossroads. Select <Start Guide> to obtain guidance to the destination.

Destination by a Facility

<**Set destination**> (Enter) <**POI**> (Enter)

Points of Interest (POI) is a collective name for places such as Petrol Stations, Hotels, Restaurants, Aston Martin dealers, Hospitals, vehicle Parking, etc.

Select <City> and press **ENTER**. Select a City as described earlier.

 When a City is entered POI are searched for around the City area. If you want to search for a POI by <Name> or <Type> without specifying a City, select <City>, press **ENTER**, then **BACK** to delete the current City.

It is possible to first select <Type> then <Name> without entering a City.

Move to <Type> or <Name> and press **ENTER**.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to select the desired letters and press **ENTER** or move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press **ENTER**.

Some POI (when selecting by <Type>) have further options. For example, select petrol station and press **ENTER**.

The names of different petrol chains found in that area are then displayed. Select from among the alternatives and press **ENTER**. Return to the character table with **BACK**. Press **BACK** to delete the entered letters one at a time.

Last 20 Destinations

<Set destination> (Enter) **<Last 20>** (Enter)

Press **ENTER** to see the 20 most recently entered destinations. Move to the desired destination using the **JOYSTICK** and press right or **ENTER** to access the submenu.

<Set as destination> - Start guidance to the destination.

<Delete location> - Deletes the entered destination.

Destination from a Point on the Map

(Set Destination > (Enter) <Point on map> (Enter)

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move the cross on the map and specify a destination directly on the map. The centre of the cross indicates the destination on the map.

The name and destination that correspond to the cross position are shown at the bottom of the map.

Press **ENTER** to access the Scroll menu:

<Scale> - Press the **JOYSTICK** right to access the Scale quick menu. Move to <+> or <-> then press **ENTER** repeatedly to zoom in or out of the map. Press **BACK** to return to Map view.

<Set as destination> - Press **ENTER**. Guidance to the destination will start automatically.

Show Destination

<Show Destination> (Enter)

Show Destination provides a map view of the intended destination, time to destination and distance to go. Press **BACK** twice to return to map view.

Advanced Mode Settings

Route Options

<Settings> (Enter) **<Route options>** (Enter)

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings by pressing **ENTER**.

<Route> - Select a **<Fast>**, **<Short>** or **<Easy>** when calculating a route.

<Avoid highways> - Indicate if Highways are to be avoided when calculating the route.

<Avoid toll roads> - Indicate if toll roads are to be avoided when calculating the route.



Easy - Avoiding complex intersections and difficult manoeuvres, less narrow roads and junctions.

<Avoid ferries> - Indicate if ferries are to be avoided when calculating the route.

<Avoid car train> - Indicate if car trains are to be avoided when calculating the route.

<Avoid time-restr. roads> - Indicate if the system should avoid time-restricted roads when calculating the route. The correct time zone must be set for the function to work (Refer to 'System Settings', page 10.16).

<Avoid specified areas> - Select the areas the system is to avoid when calculating the route (Refer to 'Avoid Specific Areas', page 10.27).

<Reset to default> - Restore factory settings. Press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select <OK> or <Cancel> and press **ENTER**.

 *The system can only use larger roads when calculating a route extending over a long distance. If <No> is selected for toll roads and Highways, they are avoided to the greatest possible extent and are only used if there is no other reasonable alternative.*

Map Options

<Settings> (Enter) **<Map options>** (Enter)

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings by pressing **ENTER**.

<POI selection> - Press the **JOYSTICK** right to obtain the submenu.

<Show all> - See all POI symbols on the map image.

<Hide all> - No symbols are to be displayed.

<Show selected> - Choose among the symbols.

Activate or deactivate using the **JOYSTICK** (right or left). Confirm settings by pressing **ENTER**.

<Map> - Indicate if the map is to display. If the map is hidden, the system guides with an arrow.

<Map view> - If in one map view on the main **DISPLAY**, select to view either a 2D or 3D map. If in two map view on the main **DISPLAY** select views for left and right maps (Refer to 'Map View', page 10.31).

<2D Map orientation> - Indicate whether north or the heading (direction of travel) should be up when looking at the map.

<Compass> - Indicate if the compass is to be shown on the **SCREEN**.

<Current Location> - Indicate if the name of the street on which the vehicle is currently driving should be shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**.

<Reset to default> - Restore factory settings. Press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select <OK> or <Cancel> and press **ENTER**.

 *<2D Map orientation> is only available when 2D view is selected in <Map view>.*

Guiding Options

<Settings> (Enter) **<Guiding options>** (Enter)

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings by pressing **ENTER**.

<Time/dist. to go> - Select **<RTA>** (Remaining time to arrival) or **<ETA>** (Estimated time of arrival). Distance to go will also show. Select **<Hide>** if this information is not to be displayed.

<POI warning> - Indicate if an audible and visual warning is to sound and display when approaching an accident blackspot or a safety camera.

<Reset to default> - Restore factory settings. Press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select **<OK>** or **<Cancel>** and press **ENTER**.



Which areas have accident blackspots and or safety cameras marked on the map is regulated by legislation in the respective States.

System Settings

<(Settings)> (Enter) **<System settings>**

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings made using **ENTER**.

<Guiding voice> - A male or a female guiding voice can be selected.

<Guiding volume> - Guiding voice volume.

<Language> - Indicate the language to be used in the system.

<Menu color> - Select **<Black>**, **<Chrome>** or **<Blue>**.

<Map color> - Select **<Bright 1>**, **<Bright 2>** or **<Dark>**.

<Screen saver> - Indicate whether the screen saver is to be used (comes ON after 30 seconds).

<Help> - Indicate if help texts are to be displayed at the bottom of the **SCREEN**.

<Distance unit> - Select **<US miles>** or **<km>**.

Using Advanced Mode

<User mode> - Select **<Easy>** or **<Advanced>**. All destinations will be deleted if changing operating modes.

<Date & time info> - Press the **JOYSTICK** right. Set the date and time format.

<GPS Information> - Press the **JOYSTICK** right to view coordinates and address of the vehicle's position, as well as the number of satellites the system is in contact with.

<About> - System information.

<Reset to default> - Restore factory settings. Press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select **<OK>** or **<Cancel>** and press **ENTER**.

The Navigation system requires a destination to be entered so that a route to the destination can then be calculated. Various destination options are available.



*If the **SCREEN** is in map view press **BACK** to access the main menu.*

Once a valid destination has been entered **<Start Guide>** will be available.

Various destinations can be entered and saved as an itinerary (Refer to 'Itinerary', page 10.25).

Destination by an Address

<Set Destination> (Enter) **<Address>** (Enter)



<Number> will be highlighted and the last selected State will be remembered. If searching for a destination outside the current State move to <State> and press **ENTER**.

 Press the **JOYSTICK** right when an arrow is displayed on the right of the line. A list of the five last entered States will be displayed. Select the required State, if available, from the list and press **ENTER**.

SET DESTINATION	
State:	NEW YORK ▶
City:	NEW YORK ▶
Number:	<All street numbers>
Street:	<All streets>
Interse.:	<All intersections>
Set	Information
Input street	

Use the **JOYSTICK** to spell out the desired State from the Character table. Press **ENTER** for each letter.

 When there are no more alternatives, the system fills in the missing letters itself.

A list of States matching that letter combination is shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**. A scroll bar on the right indicates that there are several alternatives in the list. The number indicates how many.

Using the **JOYSTICK** move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, return to the Character table by pressing **BACK**. Press **BACK** to delete the entered letters one at a time.

Select City

Select <City> and press **ENTER**.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to spell out the desired City from the Character table. Press **ENTER** for each letter.

A list of Cities matching that letter combination is shown at the bottom of the **SCREEN**.

 Press the **JOYSTICK** right when an arrow is displayed on the right of the line. A list of the five last entered Cities will be displayed. Select the required City, if available, from the list and press **ENTER**.

 When there are no more alternatives, the system fills in the missing letters itself.

A scroll bar on the right indicates that there are several alternatives in the list. The number indicates how many.

Using the **JOYSTICK** move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, return to the Character table by pressing **BACK**. Press **BACK** to delete the entered letters one at a time.

 *States, Cities and Street names are deleted when the destinations in 'Last 20' are deleted.*

Select Street

Move to <Street> and press **ENTER**.

 *It is also possible to search for street addresses throughout the State without specifying a particular City.*

 *Street addresses are not stored in the system for some small towns. The town centre, however, can always be specified as the destination.*

Once a Street has been selected it is then possible to move to <Start Guide>, <Itinerary> (Refer to 'Itinerary', page 10.25) or <Information> (Refer to 'Information', page 10.29).

When <Start guide> is selected, the system begins calculating the route and distance to the destination (during this time, a yellow symbol is shown at the top of the **SCREEN**).

If a detour is made from the planned route during the trip, the system automatically calculates a new route (Refer to 'Route Options', page 10.14) and (Refer to 'Avoid Specific Areas', page 10.27).

 *If neither a street number or an intersecting street is specified the system guides to the middle of the street chosen.*

Select Street Number or Intersection

If the street number of the selected address is known, it can also be entered to make guidance more exact. An intersecting street can also be entered instead of the street number.

Move to <Number> and press **ENTER**. Existing street numbers are then displayed. Select a number using the **JOYSTICK** (right or left) and press **ENTER**.

Once a valid number has been entered move to:

<**Set**> - Confirm entered number.

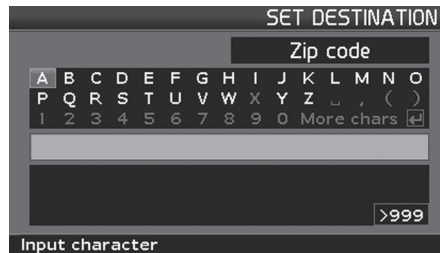
<**Information**> - Provides information on the destination.
Press **BACK** and then <Set> or press **BACK** again to cancel.

Move to <Interse> and press **ENTER**.

The roads that intersect the selected street are shown in a list.
Select from among the streets and press **ENTER**.

Destination by a Zip Code

Using the **JOYSTICK** move to <City> and press **ENTER**.
Move to <Zip code> and press **ENTER**.



Use the **JOYSTICK** to select the desired letters and numbers from the character table and press **ENTER**. Move down and select a Zip Code from the list. Press **ENTER**.

While scrolling through the list, press **BACK** to return to the table of characters. Press **BACK** to delete entered characters.

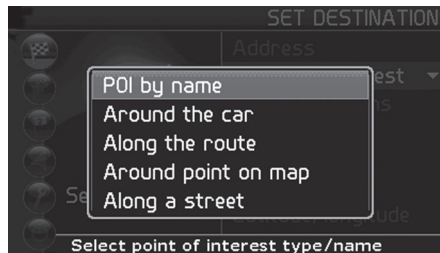
Move to <Street> and press **ENTER**. Choose letters using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER** or move down and choose a street name directly from the list if options are available.

 *In some States the entire Zip Code cannot be specified.*

Destination by a Point of Interest

<Set destination> (Enter) **<Points of interest>**
(Enter)

Points of Interest (POI) is a collective name for places such as Petrol Stations, Hotels, Restaurants, Aston Martin dealers, Hospitals, vehicle parking, etc.



<POI by name> - Move to <Type> or <Name> and press **ENTER**. Enter the name of a POI or select a POI type from the list in the menu. The list can vary and only shows the POI of the selected City or area.

<Around the car> - The system searches in a circle with a maximum radius of 155 mile (250 km). The search is stopped when 40 Points of Interest are found.

 It is also possible to search for POI around the vehicle, along the itinerary and along the Highway using the Quick menu (Refer to 'Destination from a Point on the Map', page 10.23).

Press **ENTER** and select <Last 5> or <All types>. Select a Facility from the list and press **ENTER**. Select from the list of Facility names and press **ENTER**. Select <Add to itinerary> or <POI information>.

<Along the route> - Use the procedure described for <Around the car>. When a destination has been specified, the system can search for POI within an area maximum 0.5 mile (1 km) from the route.

<Around point on map> - The system searches the same way as <Around the car>, but around a specified point on the map. Enter Map scroll (press the **JOYSTICK** left, right, up or down) and scroll to a destination on the map. Press **ENTER** and select <POI around>.

<**Along a street**> - The system searches along a specified street. Select an option using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**.

Destination by a Stored Location

<**Set destination**> (Enter) <**Stored destinations**> (Enter)

A stored location is a destination stored previously, i.e. your home address, an airport, etc. If no destinations are stored this option will not be available.

A list of stored destinations is displayed. Use the **JOYSTICK** to move to a stored destination. Press **ENTER** to access the submenu.

<**Add to itinerary**> - Add the stored destination in the itinerary.

<**Information**> - Provides information on the stored destination.

<**Edit**> - Change the name, etc. of the stored destination.

<**Sorting**> - Sort stored destinations by icon or name.

<**Delete Destination**> - Delete a stored destination.

<**Del. all**> - Delete all stored destinations.

Select an option and press **ENTER**.

Last 20 Destinations

<**Set destination**> (Enter) <**Last 20**> (Enter)

Press **ENTER** to see the 20 most recently entered destinations. Move to the desired destination using the **JOYSTICK** and press right or **ENTER** to access the submenu.

<**Add to itinerary**> - Adds the destination to the itinerary.

<**Information**> - Provides information on the destination.

<**Delete Location**> - Deletes the entered destination.

Return Trip

<Set destination> (Enter) **<Return trip>** (Enter)

Press **ENTER** to obtain guidance back to the starting point.

Select **<Start guidance>** and press **ENTER**.

The system then starts guiding back to the destination Start guidance was last selected.

Destination from a Point on the Map

<Set Destination> (Enter) **<Point on map>** (Enter)

The centre of the cross indicates the current destination on the map. The name and destination that correspond to the cross position are shown at the bottom of the map.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move the cross to the desired destination and press **ENTER** to access the Scroll menu. Move to **<Set as destination>** and press **ENTER**.

Destination by Coordinates

<Set Destination> (Enter) **<Latitude / longitude>**

Using the **JOYSTICK** move from row to row and up or down to set coordinates.

<OK> - Shows the destination of the specified coordinates on the map. Press **ENTER** to access the scroll menu. Move to **<Set as destination>** and press **ENTER** to select as a destination.

Press **BACK** to return to coordinate input.

<Cancel> - Return to the previous screen.

Store a Destination

Up to 250 destinations can be stored for re-use in different itineraries. An audible signal notifies the driver that a stored location is approaching and that further information can be linked with the stored location.

Saving a Location from the Itinerary

<Itinerary> (Enter)

Using the **JOYSTICK** move up or down the itinerary to the destination you want to store and press **ENTER** to access the submenu. Select **<Store>** and press **ENTER**.

Select the symbol to be displayed in the map and press **ENTER**. Enter the required name. Scroll to **<Store>** and press **ENTER**.



Saving a Location from the Map

Press the **JOYSTICK** in any direction to enter Map scroll.
Move to the destination you want to store and press **ENTER**.
Select <Store> from the Scroll menu and press **ENTER**.

Move to the symbols. Select and press **ENTER**. Enter the required name. Scroll to <Store> and press **ENTER**.

Adjust the Location

Select <Edit> (Enter) <Adjust> (Enter) to move the position of the stored location on the map.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move the cross (on the map) to the new position of the stored location and press **ENTER**. Select <Store location> (Enter) <Store> (Enter) to save the change. Press **BACK** to return to the Main screen.

Add Information

<Set Destination> (Enter) <Stored locations> (Enter)

Move to the stored location in the list and press **ENTER**. Select <Add info.> and press **ENTER** to add further information on a stored location to the list provided.

Select <Store> and press **ENTER** to save the change(s). Press **BACK** repeatedly to return to the Main screen.

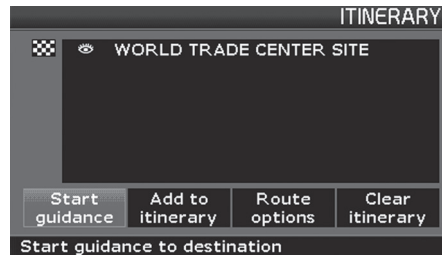
 Press **BACK** to erase the original name and replace it with a new one.

Itinerary

The Itinerary menu is available once a destination has been entered. An itinerary with several intermediate destinations can be created to avoid entering destination after destination during your trip. One final destination with up to six intermediate destinations can be specified in an itinerary.



<Itinerary> (Enter)



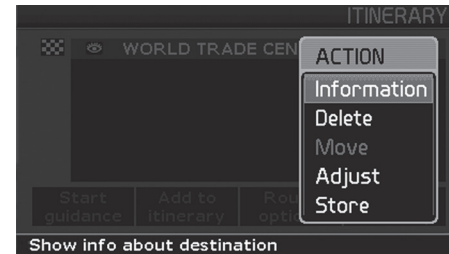
<Start guidance> - Starts guidance to the destination.

<Add to itinerary> - Add another destination using the **<Set destination>** screen.

<Route options> - Settings for route priorities.

<Clear itinerary> - Erase the entire itinerary.

Edit an Itinerary



Select a destination in the itinerary and press **ENTER** to access options.

<Information> - Provides information on the destination.

<Delete> - Clears the destination from the itinerary.

<**Move**> - Changes the position of the destination in the itinerary.

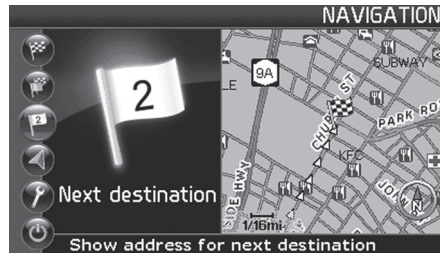
<**Adjust**> - Changes the destination of the destination on the map.

<**Store**> - Saves the destination under <Stored Destinations>.

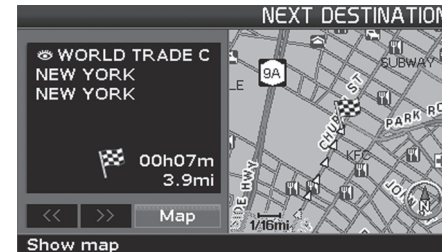
Select an option and press **ENTER**.

Next Destination

<**Next destination**> (Enter)



Next Destination displays information on the next destination in the itinerary such as name, remaining journey time and distance from present position to the destination.



Press the << or >> buttons to view more destinations (if available).

Move to <Map> and press **ENTER** to view the whole map image and obtain Map scroll. Press **ENTER** again to obtain the Map scroll menu (Refer to 'Map Scroll', page 10.32).

Avoid Specific Areas

Specify an Area on the Map

<Settings> (Enter) **<Route options>** (Enter) **<Avoid specified areas>**

Press the **JOYSTICK** right, move to **<Selected>** and press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select **<Map>**.

Using the **JOYSTICK**, move the centre point of the hairline cross to the centre of the area to be avoided. The name of the destination the centre point rests on is displayed at the bottom of the map.

The rectangle indicates the size of the area. Press **ENTER** to obtain the submenu.

Select option in the submenu and press **ENTER**.

<Scale> - Specify the size of the area to be avoided. Move to + or - and press **ENTER** repeatedly to adjust the scale. Press **BACK** to accept.

<Set area to avoid> - Saves specified area. Select **<OK>**.

<Adjust size> - Change the size of the area using the **JOYSTICK**. Press **BACK** to undo the change, or press **ENTER** and select **<Set area to avoid>** to save.

<Adjust area> - Move the area using the **JOYSTICK**. Press **BACK** to undo the move, or press **ENTER** and select **<Set area to avoid>** to save.

Specify an Area Address

<Settings> (Enter) **<Route options>** (Enter) **<Avoid specified areas>**

Press the **JOYSTICK** right, move to **<Selected>** and press the **JOYSTICK** right. Select **<Address>**.

Enter the address of the area to be avoided. The address then constitutes the centre of the area.

Use the **JOYSTICK** to move between the rows and press **ENTER** to enter the address. Once a valid area has been selected, move to **<Set>**, press **ENTER**.

The specified area is shown on the map. Press **ENTER** to obtain the submenu.

Select *<Scale>*, *<Set area to avoid>*, *<Adjust size>* or *<Adjust area>*, (Refer to 'Specify an Area on the Map', page 10.27).

<Cancel> - Returns to saved areas.

Select an Area to Avoid

<Settings> (Enter) *<Route options>* (Enter) *<Avoid specified areas>*

Press the **JOYSTICK** right:

<None> - Press **ENTER** to deactivate areas already activated.

<Selected> - Press the **JOYSTICK** right to view specified areas. Press **JOYSTICK** right to activate or deactivate areas already saved.

Avoid Area Options

<Settings> (Enter) *<Route options>* (Enter) *<Avoid specified areas>*

Press the **JOYSTICK** right, move to *<Selected>* and press the **JOYSTICK** right.

Scroll to a specified area or an empty specified area and press **ENTER**. Choose option on the submenu using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**.

<Map> - Press **ENTER** and use the **JOYSTICK** to indicate the area to be avoided directly on the map. This will overwrite any current specified area.

<Address> - Enter the address of the area to be avoided. The address constitutes the centre of the area. This will overwrite any current specified area.

<Edit> - Change the name of the saved area. Press **BACK** to delete the current area name. Enter a new name and select *<Set>* to accept or *<Cancel>*.

<Delete> - Delete a saved area. Confirm with *<OK>*.

Information

The address, coordinates and in some cases the telephone number of a POI is can be viewed when ever *<Information>* is available.

<Map> - Press **ENTER** to see the facility destination on the map.

<2nd Fac> - Shows related Points of Interest in the area around the first facility.

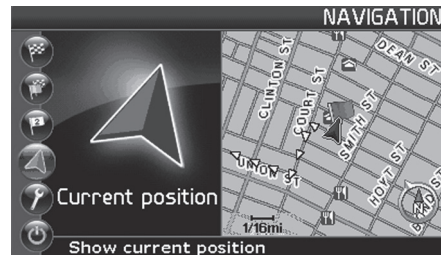
<Call> - If the information screen contains a valid phone number press *<Call>* to call that number. The call will be place through the vehicle Hands-Free system.

Current Position

<Current position> (Enter)

The map image shows the vehicle's position and information on the destination, for example name and coordinates.

<GPS> indicates the number of satellites the system is in contact with, on the left side of the **SCREEN**.



Quick Menus

When in Map mode press **ENTER** to access the Quick menus. Use the **JOYSTICK** to scroll through the menus.



1 MAP SCALE - Move to *<+>* or *<->* then press **ENTER** repeatedly to zoom in or out of the map. Scale is indicated at the bottom of the **SCREEN**.

Select the 'green flag + finish flag' option to view the complete route. Select the 'vehicle + finish flag' option to view the remaining route from the present position to the destination.

If two map images are displayed the **MAP SCALE** symbol appears both ends of the Quick menu.

- 2 **GUIDANCE** - Press **ENTER** to repeat a voice guidance.
- 3 **MAP AND ROUTE OUTLINE - (Advanced mode only)**
- <Route Outline>** - The destination and remaining distance are shown at the top of the **SCREEN**. The next guidance point is highlighted. This is followed by a list of remaining guidance points. In addition to the name of the road, the distance between guidance points and an arrow indicating the type of manoeuvre are shown.
- Guidance points are deleted as they are passed. If a deviation is made from the given route, the system calculates a new one.

- <Map View>** - Choose between displaying one or two maps. Select **<One map>** or **<Two maps>** view. Different degrees of magnification can be selected for each map image of the same area.
- 4 **DETOUR - (Advanced Mode Only)**
- When the detour function is used, the system calculates an alternate route to avoid part of the calculated route. This is used to avoid construction, for example. Move to the Detour Quick menu using the **JOYSTICK**.

Set the number of kilometres the route is to be avoided using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**. The system then calculates a new route and avoids the original route for the specified number of kilometres starting from the current position. A destination must be specified for the function to work.

<Avoid Specific Street> - Select **<Avoid>** and press **ENTER**. A list of streets that are part of the route are displayed. Move to the street to be avoided using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**.

5 POINTS OF INTEREST - (Advanced Mode Only)

Search for Points of Interest which are easily accessible from the Highway. Select from *<Around the car>*, *<Along the route>* or *<Along HWY>*. When a calculated route extends over more than one Highway, the system only searches along the current section of Highway.

If no route is calculated, the system searches along the Highway the vehicle is travelling on. The list shows rest areas, petrol stations and restaurants along the Highway along with the distance. Select a facility using the **JOYSTICK**.

Map View

The **DISPLAY** can show either one or two maps. In two map view each map view can have different viewing scales. Select one or two maps using the  Quick menu.

One Map Settings

Move to *<Settings>* (Enter) *<Map options>* (Enter) *<Map view>*. Press the **JOYSTICK** right or left to select from *<2D North>*, *<2D Heading>* or *<3D>*.

 *2D - from directly above*. *3D - obliquely from above*.

When viewing the map in 3D the map elevation is adjustable.

To change the map elevation move to *<Settings>* (Enter) *<Map options>* (Enter) *<Map view>* (Enter).

If not already selected select 3D and press **ENTER**. An elevation adjustment window will show in the bottom left corner of the **DISPLAY**. Use the **JOYSTICK** to move up or down to change the map elevation, press **ENTER** to select. Press **BACK** repeatedly to return to map view.

Two Map Settings

Right Map

Move to *<Settings>* (Enter) *<Map options>* (Enter) *<Right map view>*. Press the **JOYSTICK** right or left to select from *<2D North>*, *<2D Heading>* or *<3D>*.

In 3D map view the direction of travel is always upwards on the screen. Map elevation can be adjusted as described for One Map Settings.

In 2D map view select whether the direction of travel or North is to be upwards on the screen.

Left Map

Move to <Settings> (Enter) <Map options> (Enter) <Left map view>. Press the **JOYSTICK** right or left to select from <2D North> or <2D Heading>.

Map Scroll



While in Map view move the **JOYSTICK** in any direction activate Map scroll.

The **JOYSTICK** can then be used to move the cross freely over a large area with a detailed scale.



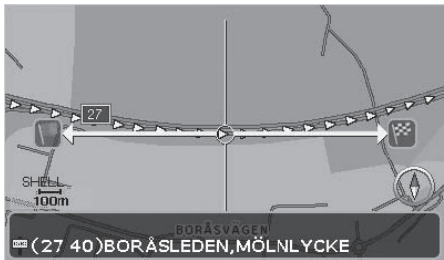
If using Map scroll in while in 3D view the view will default to 2D.

The destination that corresponds to the cross position is shown at the bottom of the map.

Follow Route

To follow the current route on the map move the centre of the cross to rest over the indicated route. Once the cross rests over the route either the horizontal or vertical cross line will show thicker. If the thicker line is vertical press and hold the **JOYSTICK** left or right, if the thicker line is horizontal press and hold the **JOYSTICK** up or down. While the **JOYSTICK** pressed the cross will follow the intended route.

Flag symbols indicate whether the line points towards the start of the route or towards the destination.

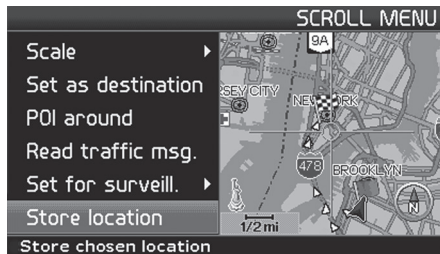


Scroll Menu

Press **ENTER** to access the Scroll menu.

<Scale> - Function to temporarily change the map scale.
Press **BACK** to return to the original scale and to return to the vehicle's position on the map.

<Set as destination> - Select a location on the map as a destination or intermediate destination (Refer to 'Destination from a Point on the Map', page 10.23).



Advanced Mode Only

<POI around> - The system searches for Points of Interest (POI) around a specific point on the map. The system searches in a circle with a radius of 1.5 mile (2 km). If less than 40 Points of Interest are found, the search is extended to a radius of maximum 155 mile (250 km).

<Store location> - Save a location on the map. Select an option using the **JOYSTICK** and press **ENTER**.

Map symbols

 Aston Martin Dealer	 Airport	 Convention / Exhibition centre	 Compressed natural gas	 Ice skating	 Library
 Automobile club	 Amusement park	 Concert hall	 Dry cleaning	 Liquid petroleum gas	 Lookout
 ATM	 Bank	 Doctor	 Embassy	 Marina	 Movie theatre
 Beach	 Bowling	 Ferry terminal	 Fire brigade	 Museum	 Night life / Music club
 Bus station	 Cafe	 Gas station	 Golf course	 Park & ride	 Parking garage
 Casino	 City centre	 Government office	 Historical monument	 Parking lot	 Pharmacy
 City hall / Civic / Community centre / Court house	 Company	 Hospital	 Hotel		

 Place of worship	 Police station
 Post office	 Public support airport
 Recreation area	 Rest area
 Restaurant	 Shopping centre / Groceries
 Ski resort	 Sports complex
 Swimming pool	 Theatre / Opera

 Toll booth ^a	 Tourist attraction
 Tourist information	 Train station
 University / College / School	 Unincorporated community
 Winery	 Vehicle repair facility
 Vehicle rental	 Zoo

^a. Cannot be selected as a destination.

Frequently Asked Questions

(Q) The position of the vehicle on the map is wrong.

(A) The GPS system indicates the position of the vehicle with an accuracy of about 65 ft. There is a greater chance of error when driving on roads lying parallel to another road, winding roads, roads on several levels and after driving a long distance without making any distinctive turns. High mountains, buildings, tunnels, viaducts, over or underpasses etc. also have a negative affect on the reception of GPS signals, which means that accuracy in calculating the position of the vehicle may decrease.

(Q) The Navigation system does not always calculate the fastest or shortest route.

(A) When calculating a route, distance, width of road, type of road, number of right or left turns, roundabouts etc. are all taken into account in order to produce the best theoretical route. A more efficient selection of route may be possible based on experience and knowledge of the area.

(Q) The Navigation system uses toll roads, Highways and Ferries even though I chose to avoid them.

(A) When calculating routes over longer distances, for technical reasons, the system can only use larger roads when calculating a route extending over a long distance. If <NO> is selected for toll roads and Highways, they are avoided to the greatest possible extent and are only used if there is no other reasonable alternative.

(Q) The position of the vehicle on the map is incorrect after transportation.

(A) If the vehicle is transported, for example by ferry or train, or in such a way as to impede the reception of GPS signals, it can take up to five minutes before the position of the vehicle is correctly calculated.

(Q) The position of the vehicle on the map is incorrect after the vehicle battery has been disconnected.

(A) If power has been cut from the GPS antenna, it can take more than five minutes for the GPS signals to be received correctly and the position of the vehicle to be calculated.

(Q) The map image does not correspond with the real situation.

(A) Factors such as the constant expansion and rebuilding of the road network, new traffic regulations constantly being introduced etc. means that the digital map database is not always complete. The information stored in the maps is constantly being developed and updated. An Aston Martin Dealer can provide further information.

(Q) The scale of the map sometimes changes.

(A) Scale is affected by vehicle speed. At speeds over 87 mph (140 km/h) the largest possible degree of magnification is 820 ft (250 m). Once speed decreases to 74.5 mph (120km/h), the system is once again able to display all degrees of magnification. If no detailed map information is available, the degree of magnification automatically selected regardless of speed.

(Q) The expected menu option is missing.

(A) Look at the settings that have been made. Select *<Reset to default>* to restore the original settings.

(Q) The system shows the route I am already on when I request *Calculate new route* or *Detour*.

(A) The system cannot find a good alternative to the current route.

(Q) The vehicle symbol on screen jumps forwards or spins.

(A) The Navigation system may need a few seconds to sense the position and movement of the vehicle before driving off. Switch OFF both the Navigation system and the engine. Start again, but stay stationary for a while before starting to drive.

(Q) I'm going to make a long journey but i do not want to specify a special destination to the Cities I am thinking of travelling through. How do I most easily create an itinerary?

(A) Specify the destination directly on the map using the hairline cross. The system automatically guides you to the final destination even though you are driving beside the intermediate destinations.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Maintenance

Contents

Introduction.....	11.2	Wheels and Tires	11.15	Vehicle Battery Charge.....	11.34
Servicing Precautions	11.3	US Department of Transportation	11.17	Battery Protection Mode	11.38
Dangerous Substances	11.4	Tire Sidewall Information	11.18	Electrical Start From Another Vehicle.....	11.40
Vehicle Jacking	11.5	Vehicle Loading	11.21	Fuses.....	11.41
Emergency Items	11.6	Safety Practices	11.24	Bulbs.....	11.45
Owner Maintenance.....	11.7	Tire Terminology.....	11.25	Headlamp Alignment	11.49
Opening and Closing the Hood	11.8	Winter Tires.....	11.26	Door Window Reset.....	11.50
Fluid Levels.....	11.10	Tire Sealant Kit.....	11.26	Bodywork and Fittings.....	11.51
Windshield Blade Replacement	11.14	Transporting and Towing.....	11.32	Vehicle Cleaning	11.51
Brake Pad 'Bedding-in'	11.14	Vehicle Battery.....	11.33	Vehicle Storage	11.55

Introduction

Each item in the Service Schedules must be performed on time as failure to do so may void the New Vehicle Warranty or other warranties. It is the owner's responsibility to see that the vehicle is maintained properly and in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedules.

Due to the sophistication of the various systems and the specialized equipment required to maintain your vehicle, owner maintenance should be restricted to the routine procedures described in this Owner's Guide. If you think that your vehicle is not functioning properly, please return it to an Aston Martin Dealer to be checked professionally.

Restraint Systems

Aston Martin recommend that the inflatable (airbags) restraint systems and seat belt components installed to this vehicle are replaced at 10 (ten) year intervals from the date of manufacture on the certification label.

Electronic Fuel Injection

Warnings

**** Any modifications or additions to the fuel system not specifically designed by Aston Martin are prohibited. If carried out, they may cause damage to the fuel system which in some circumstances could result in fire. All Service Action Campaigns must be undertaken by an Aston Martin Dealer.***

**** If the fuel system is allowed to run dry irreparable damage to the fuel pumps may occur.***

The electronic fuel injection system requires special equipment and test facilities to set up and maintain so that the vehicle gives maximum performance coupled with economy, reliability and safe vehicle emissions. You are, therefore, strongly advised to entrust all service work to an Aston Martin Dealer.

Parts and Lubricants

⚠ This vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by the use of improper engine oil. Low quality or obsolete oils do NOT provide the protection required by modern, high performance engines. Failure to use engine oil that meets the required specification (Refer to 'Fluids', page 12.12) could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increased pollution. It could also lead to engine failure.

When undertaking a servicing task only parts, materials, lubricants, etc. that are specifically recommended by Aston Martin should be used. Failure to do so can result in damage to your vehicle and may invalidate your New Vehicle Warranty or other warranties (Refer to 'Warranty', page C.1).

Emission Warranty

The emission control systems installed to vehicles for certain markets are covered by a separate warranty. A statement of the provisions is given in the Warranty section of this Owner's Guide. **You are advised to familiarize yourself with all warranty conditions at the earliest opportunity after taking delivery of your vehicle.**

Servicing Precautions

⚠ Warnings

*** Protect yourself against dangerous substances (Refer to 'Dangerous Substances', page 11.4).**

*** Keep hands, hair, tools, items of clothing and jewelry clear of all drive belts, pulleys and operating mechanisms. The cooling fans may operate even though the engine is not running.**

*** Do not breathe exhaust fumes. Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide. Carbon monoxide is a dangerous gas, which is colorless and odorless and can cause unconsciousness and may be fatal. Never start or leave the engine running in an enclosed, unventilated area.**

*** Do not work beneath the vehicle with a vehicle lifting jack as the only support. Place suitable stands under the vehicle.**

** Avoid skin contact with all exhaust system and engine components, engine fluids and escaping steam. They may be hot and will burn you.*

** Keep children and pets clear of the vehicle. Do not allow anyone inside the vehicle unless specifically working to your instructions.*

** Whenever possible work in the engine compartment with the engine cool, the ignition switched OFF and the vehicle battery disconnected.*

** Petrol is highly flammable and, in confined spaces, is also explosive and toxic. In the event of spillage, switch OFF the engine, use no naked flame or light. Do not smoke. Do not inhale fumes.*

To avoid personal injury, the following safety precautions must be observed when the hood is open and the engine is running or the ignition is switched ON.

Dangerous Substances

Warnings

** Many liquids and other substances used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should under no circumstances be consumed and should, so far as possible, be kept from contact with the skin. These substances include battery electrolyte, antifreeze, oil, brake and clutch fluid, petrol, windshield washer additives, lubricants, refrigerant and various adhesives.*

** Particular care should be taken to avoid unnecessary contact with used engine oil. Always read carefully the instructions printed on labels or stamped on components and follow them carefully. Such instructions are included for reasons of your health and personal safety. Never disregard them.*

** Dangerous substances should be kept out of reach of children.*

Engine Oils

Warning

** Prolonged and repeated contact with used engine oils can cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer. Avoid excessive contact, wash thoroughly after contact. Keep out of reach of children. When your oil is changed, be sure that it is done by an experienced person. In addition, observe all laws regarding the disposal of waste oil and toxic fluids.*

Protect The Environment

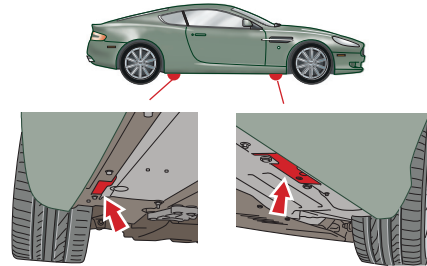
Warning

** It is illegal to pollute drains, water courses, or soil. Use authorized waste disposal facilities, including civic amenity sites and garages providing facilities for receipt of used oil. If in doubt, contact your local authority for advice.*

Vehicle Jacking

This vehicle is not supplied with a vehicle jack. If this vehicle is to be raised using a vehicle jack make sure that the following jacking points are use.

 **Do not raise the vehicle by placing a vehicle jack under the suspension arms.**



Warnings

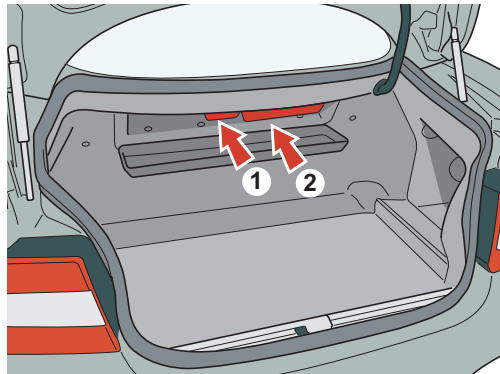
- * Make sure that no persons are in the vehicle before jacking commences.*
- * Make sure that the parking brake is set and that the vehicle is in Park (Automatic) or 1st Gear (Manual).*
- * Make sure that the vehicle is parked on firm and level ground to make sure a secure base for the jack.*

Emergency Items

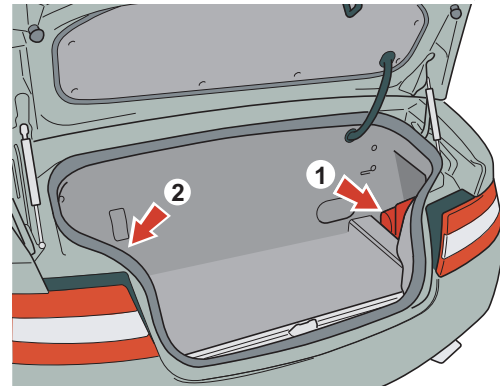
The following emergency items are located in the trunk.

- 1 First Aid Kit (Option).
- 2 Tire Sealant Kit (Refer to 'Tire Sealant Kit', page 11.26).

Coupe Trunk



Volante Trunk



Owner Maintenance

In the interests of safety and reliability, it is advisable to carry out the following checks at the intervals suggested (more frequently if your vehicle is heavily used or operating in adverse conditions), and always before starting on a long journey. Refer to the following pages for advice and check procedures.

Before Use Check:

- Operation of lamps, horn, indicators, wipers, washers and warning symbols
- Check there is sufficient fuel for the intended journey, particularly at night and before entering Highways
- Operation of the seat belts
- Operation of the brakes
- Check for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle

Weekly Checks

(daily if covering high mileage or touring)

- Tires
- Coolant level
- Brake fluid level
- Power steering level
- Operate Air Conditioning system
- Windshield washer fluid level
- Check operation of windshield washers

Engine Oil Level

Check the engine oil level every fourth fuel tank fill or weekly - whichever is the soonest.

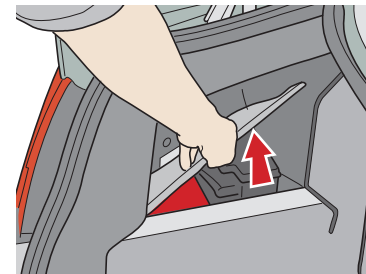
! *It is important to check the engine oil level regularly. Running the engine with engine oil below the lower mark or above the upper mark can cause serious engine damage.*

Tool Kit

A vehicle tool kit is located underneath the trim panel in the left side of the floor.

The tool kit consists of:

Towing Eye - (Refer to 'Transporting and Towing', page 11.32).



Screwdriver - For the removal of the front licence plate when installing the front towing eye.

Allen Key - For manual operation of the Convertible Roof (Volante only).

Road Wheel Lock Nut Socket (option) - For the removal of a road wheel(s) when servicing or maintenance is required.

Bulbs - (Refer to 'Bulbs', page 11.45).

Battery Conditioner

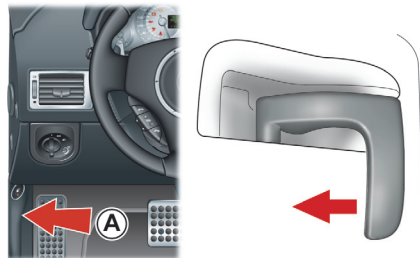
(Refer to 'Battery Conditioner', page 11.35)

Opening and Closing the Hood

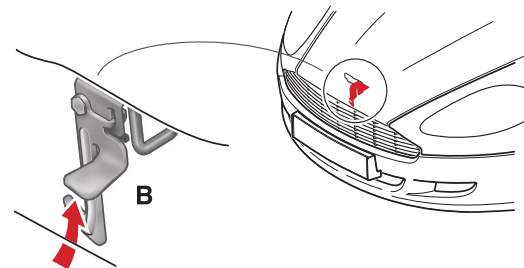
Opening

⚠ **Take care not unintentionally to pull on or catch the hood release lever.**

Pull lever (A (left side footwell)) to release the hood latch. The hood will rise but stay secured by the hood secondary catch.



Lift slightly on the hood front edge whilst pulling upward on the hood secondary catch (B) to release it. Lift the hood until fully open. The hood is held open by two gas struts.

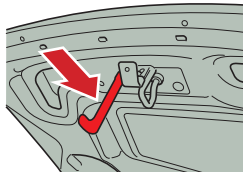


 If the windshield wipers are switched ON, they will temporarily rest in the park position while the hood is unlatched.

Closing

Warning

*** Do not pull on the hood secondary safety catch to assist in closing the hood. This may displace the hood secondary safety catch. If the secondary safety catch is displaced it may not work correctly.**



 **Do not press down hard on a hood that has not closed correctly. This may damage the hood.**

Lower the hood until it starts to fall under its own weight. At that point let the hood fall to close.

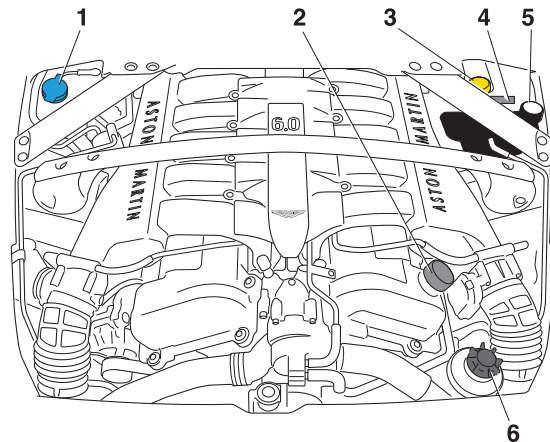
If the hood does not shut, open the hood again and repeat the closure procedure, this time assist using light hand pressure as the hood falls.

 Before closing the hood, remove any tools, cleaning cloths, etc. from the engine compartment. Make sure that no one is obstructing the 'closing' area and that hands, clothing etc. are clear.

 If the hood does not fully close the warning message 'hood not fully closed' will appear in the message centre (right).



ASTON MARTIN



Warning

** Engine components may be hot and could cause severe burns.*

- 1 Washer Fluid Reservoir.
- 2 Engine Oil Filler Cap.
- 3 Brake Fluid Reservoir.
- 4 Engine Oil Dipstick.
- 5 Engine Coolant Reservoir.
- 6 Power Steering Fluid Reservoir.

Windshield Wash Fluid Level

Top up as required. In winter, to prevent the windshield wash fluid freezing, increase the fluid concentration (refer to the manufacturers recommendations on the windshield wash fluid container).



When the level of windshield wash fluid is low an information message will show in the message centre (right) and the amber warning symbol will come ON.

State or local regulations may restrict the use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs), which are commonly used as anti-freeze agents in windshield washer fluid.

A windshield washer fluid with limited VOC content should be used only if it provides adequate freeze resistance for all regions and climates in which the vehicle will be operated.

Windshield Washer Jets

Washer jet housings are located on the rear edge of the hood. Each housing contains two washer jets.

windshield washer jets are set during manufacture and should not need adjustment. However, if adjustment is required, adjust up or down so that the fluid strikes between a third and half way up the windshield.

Engine Oil Level

Warning

** Engine oil or components may be hot and could cause severe burns.*

 ***Running the engine with engine oil below the lower mark or above the upper mark can cause serious engine damage.***

 ***This vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by the use of improper engine oil. Low quality or obsolete oils do NOT provide the protection required by modern, high performance engines.***

 ***Failure to use engine oil that meets the required specification (Refer to 'Fluids', page 12.12) could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increased pollution. It could also lead to engine failure.***

- The vehicle should be on level ground
- Check the oil level when the engine completely cold
- Check the engine oil level every fourth fuel tank fill or weekly - which ever is the sooner

Oil level check:

1. Withdraw and wipe the dipstick clean, using a lint free cloth.

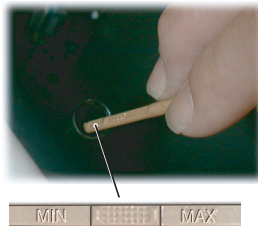


- Fully insert the dipstick with the Min. and Max. marking on the blade upwards (facing towards the engine). Withdraw again.



 Approximately two pints (one liter) is required to bring the level from Min. to Max.

- The oil level should read between the Min. & Max. marks.



- If required remove the filler, top up to the Max. mark with the recommended engine oil.
- Wait for approximately two minutes for the oil to settle, then check the level again. Add oil if required. **Do not overfill.**
- Replace the filler cap securely, replace the dipstick & press it home.

Brake Fluid Level

 **Warning**

*** Do not drive the vehicle if the brake fluid level is below the Min. mark.**

 **Make sure brake fluid does not contact the paint work during the topping-up operation. Serious paint work damage can result. If a spillage does occur, immediately flush any brake fluid from the paint work with clean, fresh water and then wipe with a clean damp cloth.**

Wipe the reservoir cap clean before removing to prevent ingress of contaminants.

The brake fluid level should read between the Min. and Max. marks.



- Remove the reservoir cap. Top up to the indicated Max. level.
- Install the reservoir cap securely.

Engine Coolant Level Check

Warning

*** Do not remove the filler cap until the coolant system has cooled. Scalding can be caused by escaping steam or coolant.**

 Use a cloth or glove to protect hands and protect face and arms adequately.

1. Remove the pressure cap to check the coolant level. The correct coolant level is to the top of the reservoir tank. Top up with the correct anti-freeze mix (Refer to 'Fluids', page 12.12), if required.



2. Make sure the filler cap is secure after topping up.

Do not over tighten.

If required to remove the pressure cap before the engine is cold, **use gloves or a protective cloth** and slowly loosen the pressure cap. Allow residual pressure to slowly drop. Continue to turn the pressure cap until it is released.

Power Steering Fluid Level

 **Make sure power steering fluid does not contact the paint work during topping up. Serious paint work damage can result. If a spillage does occur, immediately flush any power steering fluid from the paint work with clean fresh water, then wipe with a clean damp cloth.**

Always check the reservoir level when the engine is cold and with the front road wheels in the straight ahead position.

Wipe the reservoir cap clean before removing to prevent an ingress of contaminants.

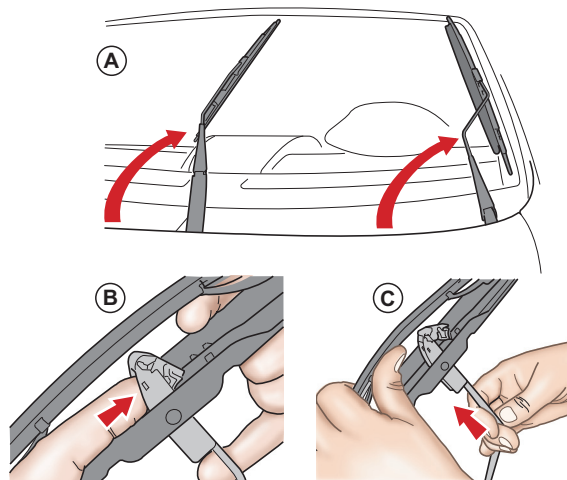
1. Remove the reservoir cap and wipe the dipstick clean with a lint free cloth. Replace and remove again. The fluid level should read between the Min. and Max. marks.
2. If required, top-up fluid level. **Do not overfill.**



Windshield Blade Replacement

To replace the windshield wiper blades the wiper arms must be set at 90° to the vehicle (A).

1. Press and hold in buttons 2 and 6 (Infotainment keypad). Insert the vehicle key in the Ignition Control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON). This will manoeuvre the wiper blade arms to the 90° position. Return the vehicle key to position '0'.
2. Lift the wiper arm(s) up and remove the worn wiper blade(s). Install the new wiper blade(s) and lower the wiper arm(s).
3. After replacing the wiper blade either:
 - Move the vehicle key back through to position 'II' to lower the wiper arms. Return the vehicle key to position '0' or remove.
 - Operate the wiper stalk - the wiper arms will complete the request and then park.



Brake Pad 'Bedding-in'

! Failure to 'bed-in' new brake pads will result in reduced brake performance and possible brake judder or squeal.

After the installation of new brake pads, brake performance will be reduced, as the brake rotors and pads need to be 'Bedded-in'. For the first few hundred kms (miles) of new brake pad use, avoid excessive braking (hard stops from high speed, alpine descents, etc.).

Wheels and Tires

Tires of the correct type, manufacturer and dimensions, with correct cold inflation pressures are an integral part of every vehicle's design. Regular maintenance of tires contributes not only to safety, but to the designed function of the vehicle. Road-holding, steering and braking are especially vulnerable to incorrectly pressurized, badly installed or worn tires.

Tires of the correct size and type, but of different make have widely varying characteristics.

Only install tires approved by Aston Martin (Refer to 'Tires', page 12.6).

Tire Pressures

Make sure that correct tire pressures are carefully maintained (Refer to 'Tires', page 12.6). Road holding, steering, braking and tire wear are especially vulnerable to incorrect tire pressures.

Check tire pressures regularly and before starting any journey. Re-inflate any tire with a low pressure at the earliest opportunity.

Pressures increase slightly when the tires are hot. For an accurate reading, pressures should be checked when the tires are cold. After adjusting the tire pressures, make sure that the valve caps are securely replaced to provide an additional air seal and to prevent the ingress of dirt.

Tire Service

 *Because of the high performance potential of this vehicle, Aston Martin strongly recommend replacement of any damaged or worn tire.*

The recommended tires for this vehicle are asymmetrical and must be installed to the wheel with the tire mark 'Outside' on the outside of the wheel rim.

They are also of different sizes on the front and rear axles, therefore complete wheels cannot be swapped from one side of the vehicle to the other or between axles.

Damage

Tires should be examined at regular intervals for wear and damage. Inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, i.e. bulges in the tread or the sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or the sidewalls. If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional.

Stones or other objects which have become lodged in the tire treads should be carefully removed.

Flat Spots

It is a characteristic of high performance tires that temporary flat spots' may develop if the vehicle is left standing in high or low ambient temperatures for any length of time.

These 'flat spots' will manifest themselves as minor vibrations when the vehicle is first driven from cold. As the tires warm up to operating temperature, normal tire shape should be restored and the vibrations cease. If vibrations persist, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Age

Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used. It is recommended that tires generally be replaced after six years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process.

 *State or local regulations on tire life may apply.*

New Tires

New tires should not be installed to the front wheels in combination with worn rear tires, as rear end stability will be affected. When new tires are required consult your Aston Martin Dealer for advice if the rear tires are also worn.

Each wheel and tire unit must be balanced dynamically to make sure of efficient steering, optimum tire wear and maximum ride comfort. Because of the potentially high speeds, it is essential that wheel balancing is carried out when new tires are installed.

'Running-In' New tires

When new tires have been installed, speed should be limited, particularly during the first 50 mile (80 km) or so of driving. Fast cornering, hard braking, and harsh acceleration should also be avoided during this period.

Tread Wear Indicators

Tread wear indicators (A) are incorporated into the construction of all tires. These indicators are integral moulded ribs spaced at regular intervals around the circumference of the tire and extend across the full width of the tread, in all primary grooves.

When a tire has worn causing one or more of the indicators to be flush with the outer face of the tread the tire has reached its wear limit. It then becomes illegal in certain countries and must be replaced.

**Uniform Tire Quality Grades**

The following information relates to the tire grading system developed by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, which grades tires by tread wear, traction and temperature performance.

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to federal safety requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread Wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of a tire tested, under controlled conditions, on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half times ($1\frac{1}{2}$) as well, on the government course, as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the normal due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

⚠ Warning

** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.*

Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ Warning

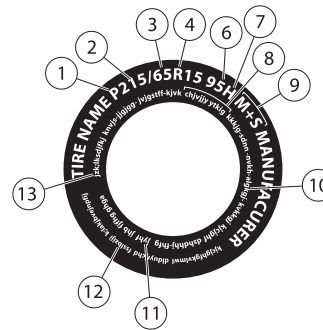
** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.*

Tire Sidewall Information

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

Information on 'P' Type Tires

'P215/65R15 95H' is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below.



 *The tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.*

1 P - Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

 *If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).*

2 215 - Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3 65 - Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

4 R - Indicates a 'radial' type tire.

5 15 - Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

6 95 - Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your Owner's Guide. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

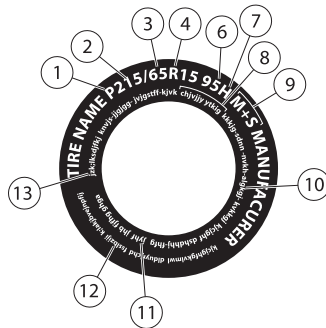
 *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

7 H - Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

 *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

Letter Rating	Speed Rating
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

 For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.



8 TIRE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (TIN) - (Also known as 'DOT Code') The Tire Identification Number (TIN) begins with the letters 'DOT' and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997.

After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

- 9 **M+S OR M/S** - Mud and Snow.
or AT - All Terrain.
or AS - All Season.
- 10 **TIRE PLY COMPOSITION AND MATERIAL USED** -
Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

- 11 **MAXIMUM LOAD** - Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label, which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door, for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.
- 12 **TREAD WEAR, TRACTION AND TEMPERATURE GRADES** - (Refer to 'US Department of Transportation', page 11.17).
- 13 **MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE INFLATION PRESSURE** - (Refer to 'Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure', page 11.23)

Vehicle Loading

Properly loading this vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading this vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining the vehicle's weight ratings from the vehicle's Safety Compliance Certification Label (A)

A

MFD BY ASTON MARTIN LAGONDA LTD
WARWICKSHIRE, ENGLAND

MFD DATE GAWR F
GAWR F

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE
FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY, BUMPER
AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN
EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE

VEHICLE IDENT.No.

PASSENGER CAR

USA

MFD BY ASTON MARTIN LAGONDA LTD
WARWICKSHIRE, ENGLAND

MFD DATE GAWR F/AV
GAWR F/AV

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE
STANDARDS PRESCRIBED UNDER THE CANADIAN
MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY REGULATIONS IN EFFECT
ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE

CE VÉHICULE EST CONFORME À TOUTES LES NORMES
QUI LUI SONT APPLICABLES EN VERTU DU RÈGLEMENT
SUR LA SÉCURITÉ DES VÉHICULES AUTOMOBILES DU
CANADA EN VIGUEUR À LA DATE DE SA FABRICATION

VEHICLE IDENT.No.

TYPE PC/VT

Canada

MFD Date - Month and Year the vehicle was manufactured (e.g. 01 / 06 = January 2006)

GVWR - Gross vehicle weight (curb weight + full payload)

GAWR F - Maximum load on the front axle

GAWR R - Maximum load on the rear axle or the Tire label (B).

B



TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY	TOTAL 4	FRONT 2	REAR 2
------------------	---------	---------	--------

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 300 kg or 661 lbs.

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE
FRONT	235/40 ZR19	250 kPa (36 PSI)
REAR	275/35 ZR19	260 kPa (38 PSI)
SPARE	NONE	

SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

4G43-69014-DA

Seating Capacity - Indicates the maximum number of occupants.

Payload - Make sure the payload (cargo + occupants) does not exceed this limit ((Refer to 'Payload', page 11.22))

Tire size - The size of tires to be used on this vehicle (Refer to 'Wheels and Tires', page 11.15).

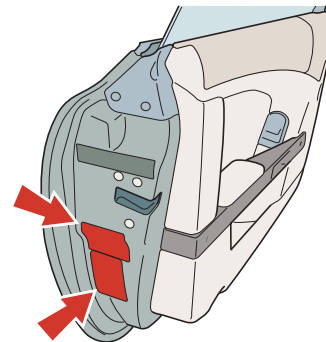
Cold inflation pressure - The maximum recommended tire inflation pressure (Refer to 'Wheels and Tires', page 11.15).



The illustrations shown are examples and may not accurately describe the labels on this vehicle.

Both labels are located on the vehicle door opening edge.

Payload - The payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the edge of the driver's door. Look for 'The Combined Weight of Occupants and Cargo Should Never Exceed XXX kg OR XXX lb' for maximum payload.



The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any after market or Aston Martin Dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new pay load.

Gross Vehicle Weight - the maximum recommended weight for a vehicle, including: the weight of the vehicle itself, fuel and other fluids, passengers, and all cargo.

Determining the Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement 'The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb' on the vehicle's tire label.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in the vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. **For example**, if the 'XXX' amount equals 661 lb and there will be four 150lb passengers in the vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 61lb ($661 - 600 (4 \times 150) = 61$ lb). In metric units ($300 - 272 (4 \times 68) = 28$ kg.).

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure

The maximum permissible inflation pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

 *The recommended cold inflation tire pressures for this vehicle can also be found in the Specifications chapter of this Owner's Guidebook (Refer to 'Tires', page 12.6)*

Safety Practices

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

Warnings

**** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.***

**** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.***

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel.

If you can not detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire Terminology

Tire Label - A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

Tire Identification Number (TIN) - A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

Inflation Pressure - A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

Standard Load - A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35psi (37psi (2.5bar) for Metric tires). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

Extra Load - A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41psi (43psi (2.9bar) for Metric tires). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

kPa - Kilo pascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

PSI - Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

Cold Inflation Pressure - The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sun light for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6km).

Recommended Inflation Pressure - The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label (found on the edge of the driver's door).

Bead Area of the Tire - Area of the tire next to the rim.

Sidewall of the Tire - Area between the bead area and the tread.

Tread Area of the Tire - Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

Rim - The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Winter Tires

The tires installed as original equipment are designed with a rubber compound, tread pattern and width specially suited for high speeds in normal road conditions, but they are less suitable during extremes of low temperatures, snow and ice. The use of winter tires will considerably improve handling during these conditions.

 *Only use Aston Martin approved winter tires.*

Winter Tires

Winter tires must be used in vehicle sets, that is, installed on all four wheels. Four special wheel rims and winter tires (Refer to 'Winter Tires', page 12.6) are required for severe weather driving. Do not exceed the tire speed rating when using winter tires.

 **Warning**

*** Maximum speed with winter tires is 150 mph (240 km/h).**

Snow (Chains) Spiders

These are available from your Aston Martin Dealer for temporary use when driving in heavy snow conditions. Snow spiders should only be installed to the rear (driven) wheels.

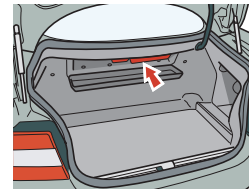
 **The maximum speed when using snow spiders is 30 mph (48 km/h). Remove the snow spiders immediately the roads are clear of snow.**

 *Make sure the installation instructions supplied with the snow spiders are kept in a safe place.*

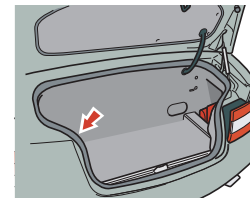
Tire Sealant Kit

Location

Coupe



Volante



 **Warning**

*** Read the instructions and warnings carefully before using the Tire Sealant Kit.**

Sealing a Punctured Tire

- Make sure the vehicle is parked far enough from traffic so that there is no danger from passing vehicles and so that you do not disrupt the traffic. Warn other vehicles using the warning triangle
- Read the user instructions and warnings on the system
- The system should only be used between – 40°F and 158°F (– 40°C and 70°C)
- The system will effectively seal a tire that was punctured by an object with a diameter of up to 1/4 in (6 mm). It is possible that a tire, especially with greater damage, will not be sealed. Do not remove objects that punctured the tire if they are still lodged in the tire

- A maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) may not be exceeded at any time after sealing the tire with the system
- The system provides only a **temporary emergency repair** for continuing the journey up to 125 mile (200 km) or to the nearest Aston Martin Dealer
- If the nearest Aston Martin Dealer is over a **125 mile (200 km)** away

Arrange for collection under the Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme

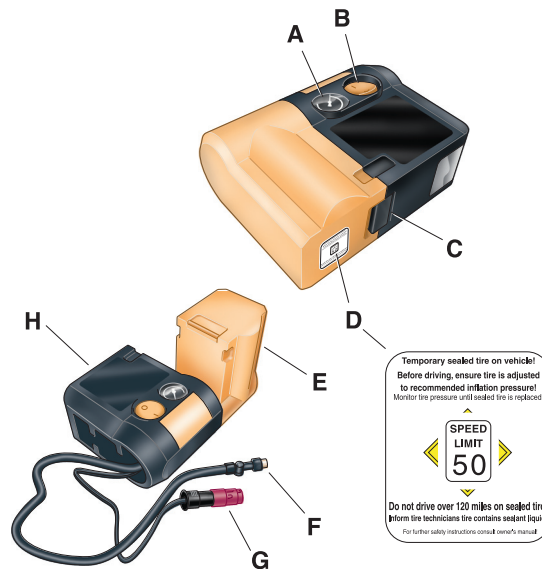
- The sealant bottle needs to be exchanged before it expires. **Do not** use the system after the expiry date on the sealant bottle or casing has been reached. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer

- Do not attempt to inflate other objects without using a system adapter and do not inflate objects with a volume greater than 1.8 ft.³ (50 liter) (air mattresses, rubber boats, etc.). Do not let the system pump air for more than 10 minutes without switching it OFF and allowing it to cool down

Warning

*** Do not use the system to seal a tire that was damaged while driving with insufficient air pressure (e.g. tire cuts, cracks, bumps or similar damage). Do not use the system to seal tires with sidewall damage. Only punctures in the tread area of tires may be sealed.**

1. Remove speed label (D) from the system and place it on the steering wheel, below the metal ring (1), as a reminder to not exceed the Maximum speed.
2. Make sure that the orange ON and OFF switch (B) is in the '0' position.
3. Remove the lead (G) and the hose (F) from the compartment (H) on the side of the system.



4. Remove the valve cap from the punctured tire and screw the hose (F) of the system onto the tire valve.
5. Place the lead plug (G) into the accessory socket of the vehicle.
6. Release the safety latch (C) and turn the orange part of the system through 90° (E), so that the orange part is in the vertical position.

Warning

*** It is dangerous to inhale vehicle fumes. Do not leave the engine running in closed or insufficiently ventilated areas.**



7. Start the engine of the vehicle (Only if the vehicle is in an open and well ventilated area).

 Warning

** Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is pumping. Watch the sidewall of the tire. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage turn OFF the compressor. The journey should not be continued. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.*

8. Turn the orange ON and OFF switch (B) to position 'I'.

 While pumping the sealant through the tire valve a temporary pressure of 60-90 psi (4-6 bar) may arise. After approximately 30 seconds this pressure will drop.

9. Inflate the tire for 7 minutes. Switch OFF the compressor briefly by pressing 'O' so as to be able to read the actual tire inflation pressure on the gauge (A).

 Warning

** If a tire pressure of 26 psi (1.8 bar) cannot be reached in 7 minutes then the tire can not be sealed. Do not attempt to reinflate the tire. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.*

10. If a tire inflation pressure of 26 psi (1.8 bar) is reached, unscrew the hose from the tire valve and screw on the valve cap.

11. Remove the lead from the accessory socket. Return the orange part of the system to its original position and fasten the latch. Stow the system safely in vehicle.

12. Immediately continue with your journey for approximately 2 mile (3 km) at a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) to allow the sealant to seal the puncture.

 Warning

** If the pressure in the tire after driving for 2 mile (3 km) is below 19 psi (1.3 bar) the tire has not been effectively sealed. The journey should not be continued. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.*

13. Stop after driving for approximately 2 mile (3 km) and re-check the tire pressure by following these steps:

- 13.1 Connect the hose to the tire valve.
- 13.2 Plug the lead plug into the accessory socket.
- 13.3 Read the pressure off the pressure gauge.

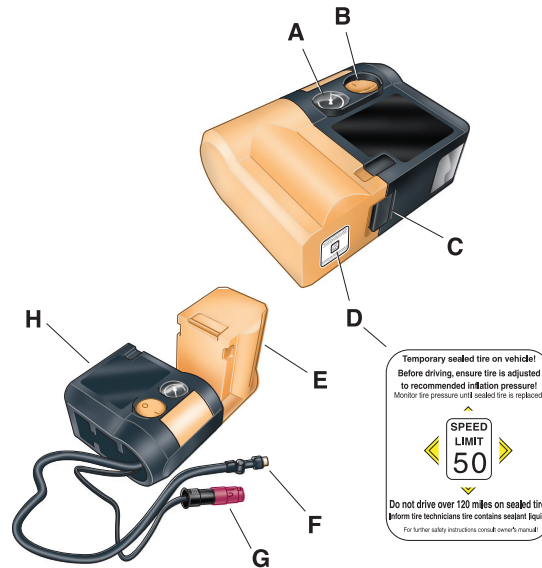
14. If the tire pressure is more than 19 psi (1.3 bar) then switch the system ON and inflate the tire to the required tire pressure (Refer to 'Tires', page 12.6) (Pump for approximately 2 minutes.) Use the pressure release valve on the hose (F) if the tire pressure is too high.

15. Remove the hose from the tire valve, replace the valve cap, disconnect the lead and stow the system safely in the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

*** After a longer period of rest, the tire pressure should be rechecked.**

16. After using the system the hose and connected parts must be exchanged. The sealant bottle and replacement parts can be obtained and exchanged at your Aston Martin Dealer.



To Pump Air Only

1. Make sure that the orange ON and OFF switch (B) is in the '0' position.
2. Remove the lead and the hose from the compartment (H) on the side of the system.
3. Connect the hose to the valve
4. Do not release the safety latch (C) and do not turn the orange part of the system into the 90° position (E). The orange part should be in the horizontal position.
5. Place the lead plug (G) into the accessory socket of the vehicle.

Warning

** It is dangerous to inhale vehicle fumes. Do not leave engine running in closed or insufficiently ventilated areas.*

6. Start the engine of the vehicle (Only if the vehicle is in an open and well-ventilated area).
7. Turn the orange ON and OFF switch (B) to the 'I' position.
8. Inflate the item to the required pressure.

Warning

** Do not inflate items with pressure requirements of more than 58 psi (4 bar).*

9. Turn the orange ON and OFF switch (B) to the '0' position when the required pressure has been reached.



ASTON MARTIN

Transporting and Towing

The recommended method for moving a defective vehicle is to have it transported in a purpose built, covered, vehicle transporter.

⚠ ***When moving the vehicle by transporter make sure that the vehicle is not lashed down, to the transporter, by the suspension control arms.***

⚠ ***Power braking and power steering are not available with the engine turned OFF. Substantially higher brake pedal pressures and steering effort are required.***

⚠ ***If a transmission fault is present, this vehicle must be transported.***

The front towing eye is only for emergency use when moving the vehicle for **short distances**, e.g. If it is causing an obstruction or if it requires winching onto a transporter.

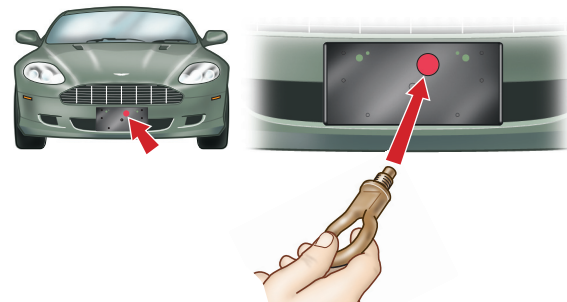
If moving the vehicle in such a situation:

1. Remove the towing eye from its storage location in the trunk.
2. Use the screwdriver, provided in the tool kit, to remove the front licence plate, then install the towing eye to the exposed female threads.

📖 *The towing eye incorporates a left hand thread.*

📖 *Protect vehicle paint work when installing the towing eye.*

3. Select 'Neutral'. Move the vehicle key to position 'II' (ignition ON), this releases the steering lock.
4. When being towed use the parking brake or footbrake very gently as required to prevent excessive slack in the tow rope.



Vehicle Battery

Warnings

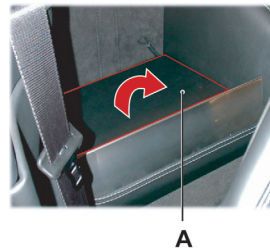
- * **Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.**
- * **Do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.**
- * **When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.**

- * **Keep batteries out of reach of children.**
- * **Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, get medical help immediately.**

 **The engine must never be run with the vehicle battery disconnected.**

 **Apart from vehicle recovery, this vehicle must not be driven if the vehicle battery is incapable of starting the engine. In this case the vehicle battery must be replaced. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.**

The vehicle battery is maintenance free and should only require checking by your Aston Martin Dealer during regular vehicle services. To access the vehicle battery, remove the trim panel (A), located in the right rear environment.



Vehicle Battery Disposal

Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner.

Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling centre to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.

Warnings

The following warnings are located on the vehicle battery.



Vehicle Battery Charge

Various systems, for example, the clock, security systems and Infotainment centre system continue to drain battery power even with the ignition switched OFF.

A **new fully charged** battery has the ability to start this vehicle, if left unused, for up to 45 days without the battery conditioner being used (Refer to 'Battery Conditioner', page 11.35) or the Battery Disconnect switch being activated (Refer to 'Battery Disconnect Switch (BDS)', page 11.37).

 *In cold climates this time may be reduced.*

Battery charge can be drained excessively in a number of ways:

- If the vehicle is unused for long periods of time

📖 *Aston Martin recommend that if this vehicle is to be left unused for ten (10) days or more the battery conditioner (mains power available) or the BDS (mains power not available) should be used.*

- If the vehicle is used regularly but only for short journeys, e.g. less than 30 mile (48 km) a journey
- If electrical systems are in use without the vehicle engine running
- If the vehicle key is left in the Ignition Control for long periods of time without the engine running

Excessive battery drain would ultimately mean that the battery would not be able to start the engine.

This vehicle has two methods of maintaining battery charge at an acceptable level if the vehicle is unused for long periods of time.

- Battery Conditioner (mains power required)
- Battery Disconnect Switch (BDS)

Battery Conditioner

If this vehicle is not going to be used for a period of time, and **mains power is available**, use the battery conditioner to maintain the battery charge level.



⚠ Warnings

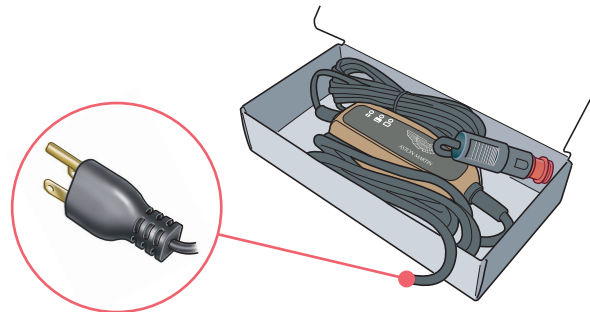
*** Do not attempt to start the vehicle with the battery conditioner connected to the mains supply.**

*** Do not smoke. Prevent flames and sparks. Explosive gasses are given off by batteries during charging.**

⚠ **For indoor use only. Disconnect mains supply before making or breaking battery connections.**

⚠ **Make sure the vehicle is in a secure area.**

📖 *The battery conditioner supplied with the vehicle is suitable for use on all types of 12 volt lead acid batteries.*



! The battery conditioner is designed for conditioning of partially or fully charged batteries. It will not effectively charge a discharged battery.

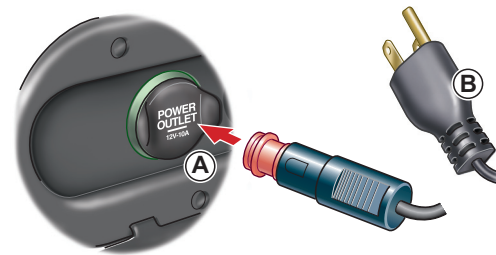
When connected the battery conditioner will maintain a small trickle charge to keep the battery in a fully charged state. The battery conditioner may be left in this state indefinitely.

To Connect the Battery Conditioner

1. Insert the accessory socket plug into the accessory socket (A).
2. Insert the mains plug (B) into the mains supply.

Gently close, but do not latch, the trunk lid. This avoids possible damage to the trunk water seal from the battery conditioner power cable.

 With the trunk left open the vehicle doors can be locked and armed (Refer to 'Vehicle Locked - Trunk Open', page 2.9).



To remove the battery conditioner first disconnect from the mains supply, then from the vehicle accessory socket.

Battery Disconnect Switch (BDS)

If this vehicle is not going to be used for a period of time, and **mains power is not available**, press the Battery Disconnect Switch (BDS) to shut down all electrical systems, except:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------|
| • Clock | • Alarm functions |
| • Engine immobilizer (PATS) | • Door window memory |
| • Vehicle access, via the vehicle key | |

This will allow this vehicle to stay unused for up to 70 days (approximately) without any long term damage to the battery.



! Once the BDS is activated the glovebox is locked (for added security). The Owner's Guidebook will not be accessible.

To reactivate the electrical systems unlock the vehicle, open the driver's door, and insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control.

The radio preset stations will require reprogramming (Refer to 'Audio', page 8.1)

FAQ

Can the BDS be activated while driving?

No – The BDS can not be activated while the vehicle key is in position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control.

What if I press the BDS by accident?

In this situation you would not be able to start the vehicle. To reactivate the electrical systems insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control.

Battery Protection Mode

! Replace the battery as soon as possible, if the battery is not capable of starting the engine.

Using the vehicle electrical systems, i.e. the infotainment system, with the vehicle key at position 'I' (ignition OFF) will drain the battery charge. Eventually the battery will drain to such a low level that it will not start the engine.

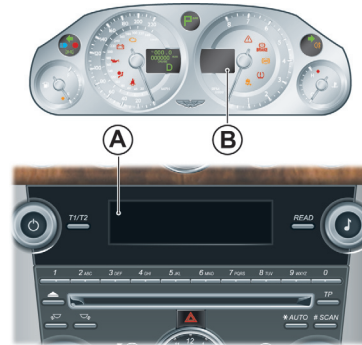
To avoid this happening, a series of safety mechanisms shut down non-essential electrical systems before excessive battery drain takes place.

FAQ

What is the first indication of battery protection mode?

A - 'Warning - Low Battery' (For 10 seconds).

B - 'Low Battery'.



What should I do next?

Turn OFF all unnecessary electrical systems to reduce battery drain. Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

What happens if I ignore the warning messages?

After approximately two to ten minutes (dependent on the rate of battery charge drain) the following messages will appear:

A - 'Infotainment will be shut down 2 minutes' (For 10 seconds).

B - 'Low Battery Power Save'.

If the audio is ON the sound will mute for 10 seconds and a short 'Beep' will be heard when the message is first displayed.

What should I do if these messages are displayed?

Turn OFF all unnecessary electrical systems. Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

What happens if I ignore second warning messages?

The infotainment system will shut down in two minutes. No other electrical system will be shut down. This significantly reduces the rate of battery drain. The following functionality will be lost:

- CD Player
- Navigation System

What should I do if the infotainment system shuts down?

Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

The infotainment system will not operate without the engine running until the battery has regained its charge. With the engine running the infotainment system will start up.

What is a reasonable length of time to run the engine?

The vehicle battery normally requires a journey of approximately 30 mile (48 km) to recharge. Additionally, use the battery conditioner to restore the vehicle battery charge.

What if I cannot restart the engine?

If the battery has been run down to a point where it will not start the engine then an external battery charger¹ will be required or your vehicle will require a 'jump start' (Refer to 'Electrical Start From Another Vehicle', page 11.40).

¹. A battery conditioner is designed for conditioning of partially or fully charged batteries. It will not effectively charge a discharged battery.

Electrical Start From Another Vehicle

(Jump Start)

⚠ Warning

** The donor vehicle must have a 12 volt battery and a negative (-), black earth terminal to make sure that the correct battery polarity is maintained.*

⚠ *Apart from vehicle recovery, this vehicle must not be driven if the vehicle battery is incapable of starting the engine. In this case the vehicle battery must be replaced.*

⚠ *If the voltage or earth of the donor vehicle is different or not known, do not attempt starting in the way described.*

If this vehicle will not start due to a discharged battery, it may be started, **for vehicle recovery**, by connecting the battery from another vehicle (donor) to this vehicle (recipient).

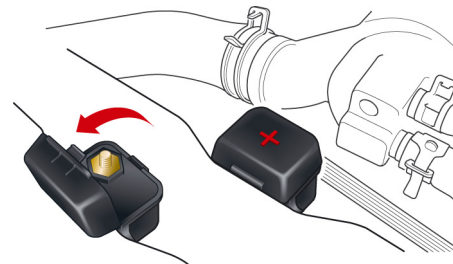
Jump Start Procedure

⚠ *Remove rings, metal watch bands and any other jewelry.*

⚠ *Turn all electrical motors and ancillaries in both vehicles OFF.*

⚠ *Switch all lamps OFF except those needed to protect vehicles or illuminate work area.*

1. Position the vehicles so that the connecting cables will reach into the recipient engine bay. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition OFF.
2. Access the jump start terminal in the recipient engine bay.
3. Connect the + ve (red) cable between the '+ve' (red) terminal of the donor battery and the jump start terminal of the recipient vehicle.



4. Connect the '-ve' (black) cable between the '-ve' (black) terminal of the donor battery and a good earth (-ve) point in the recipient engine bay (i.e. alternator mounting bracket).
5. Start the donor vehicle engine and run at about 1500 - 2000 rpm.

6. Start the engine of the recipient vehicle.

 *Recharge time will depend on the initial 'state of health' of discharged battery.*

7. Once both vehicles are running remove the jump start cables (first the '- ve' (black) cable from both vehicles and then the '+ve' (red) cable from both vehicles).

Allow the recipient engine to run until the discharged battery is sufficiently recharged (15 to 20 minutes) to start the engine without assistance.

Switch OFF and restart the recipient engine. Take the vehicle on a long run to fully charge the battery.

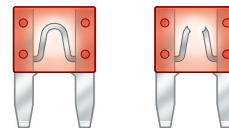
 *If this vehicle will not start consult your Aston Martin Dealer.*

Contact your Aston Martin Dealer to have the battery checked or replaced.

Fuses

The electrical system is protected by fuses. If any lamps, accessories, or controls don't work, inspect the appropriate circuit protector.

If a fuse has blown, the inside element will be melted. If the same fuse blows again, avoid using that system and consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible.



Normal

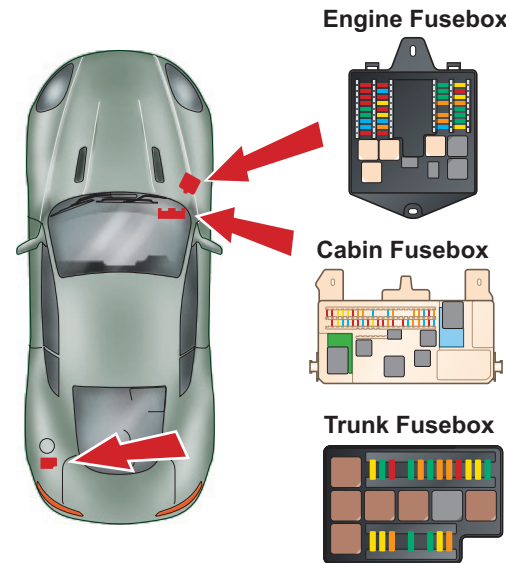
Blown

Fusebox Location

Engine Bay fuse box - Passenger Side.

Cabin fuse box - Passenger Footwell.

Trunk fuse box - Left side of trunk.



Engine Bay Fuses			Engine Bay Fuses			Engine Bay Fuses		
Fuse	Rating	Function	Fuse	Rating	Function	Fuse	Rating	Function
F1	10A	Keep alive power PCM (Bank B)	F11	15A	Horn	F22	5A	Not available
F2	10A	Clock	F12	10A	Keep alive power PCM (Bank A)	F23		Not available
F3	10A	Not available	F13	20A	Injectors 1-6 / Mass air flow sensor (MAF) (Bank A)	F24	5A	Not available
F4	20A	Engine management (PCM A)	F14	10A	Vapor Management Valve (VMV) (Bank A)	F25	5A	Not available
F5	20A	Engine management (PCM B)	F15	25A	Starter motor solenoid	F26	20A	Headlamp wash pump
F6	15A	Exhaust Gas Oxygen (HEGO) sensors / Catalyst monitor sensor (CMS) (Bank B)	F16	15A	Coils 1-6 / Suppressor solenoids (Bank A)	F27	25A	Not available
F7	15A	Coils 7-12 / Suppressor solenoids (Bank B)	F17	5A	Glove box release solenoid	F28	10A	ABS module, Steering angle sensor / Vehicle key reader
F8	10A	Engine coolant level sensor	F18	15A	Exhaust Gas Oxygen (HEGO) sensors / Catalyst monitor sensor (CMS) (Bank A)	F29	25A	Not available
F9	20A	Injectors 7-12 / Mass air flow sensor (MAF) (Bank B)	F19	30A	ABS module / Battery feed	F30	5A	Not available
F10	10A	A/C clutch	F20	30A	ABS module / Battery feed	F31	30A	Not available
			F21	30A	Not available	F32	30A	Wiper motor (slow)

Engine Bay Fuses			Cabin Fuses			Cabin Fuses		
Fuse	Rating	Function	Fuse	Rating	Function	Fuse	Rating	Function
F33	30A	Wiper motor (fast)	F46	5A	Deployable Rollbars (Volante) / Convertible Roof switch (Volante) / Driver Information / Master lamp switch / Glovebox solenoid / Battery OFF switch / Master locking switch / Centre console module	F53	10A	Headlamp levelling module / Power steering module
F34	20A	Electric steering column lock				F54	10A	Engine fuse box, Trunk fuse box / Tire pressure sensing
F35	60A	Cooling fan module				F55	20A	Accessory socket / Cigar Lighter
Cabin Fuses			F47	5A	Glovebox switch / Fuel flap release / Garage door opener / Interior lamps (front / footwell / rear) / Trunk lamps / Seat switches / Trunk accessory socket illumination	F56	10A	Centre console module / Sounder module / Hands-Free phone module
Fuse	Rating	Function				F57	15A	Diagnostic connectors / Brake pedal switch
F43	10A	Multi media module display / Media player / Integrated audio module				F58	10A	High beam (right side) / Headlamp Levelling module
F44	10A	Airbag module	F48	15A	Front windshield washer relay and pump	F59	10A	High beam (left side)
F45	15A	Not available	F49	10A	Airbag module / Power seats	F60	15A	Drivers seat heater
			F50	5A	Not available			
			F51	10A	Dynamic stability control / Diagnostic inputs / Parking aid module			
			F52	5A	Not available			

Cabin Fuses			Cabin Fuses			Cabin Fuses		
Fuse	Rating	Function	Fuse	Rating	Function	Fuse	Rating	Function
F61	15A	Passenger seat heater	F70	15A	Not available	F82	25A	Passenger door module
F62	20A	A/C module	F71		Not available	F83	25A	Driver door module
F63	20A	Not available	F72		Not available	F84	30A	Passenger seat power and switch pack
F64	5A	Global positioning system module	F73	5A	Not available	F85	30A	Driver seat power and switch pack
F65	5A	Multi media module / Multi media display / Integrated audio module / AM/FM antenna amplifiers	F74	15A	Fuel pump	F86	5A	Ignition Control
			F75		Not available			
			F76		Not available			
F66	10A	Auxiliary socket module	F77	15A	Trunk power socket / Battery disconnect module			
F67	15A	Spare	F78		Not available			
F68	5A	Not available	F79	5A	Reversing Lamps / Parking Aid Module / Garage Door Opener			
F69	5A	Convertible Roof module (Volante)	F80	5A	Battery OFF switch			
			F81	20A	Ignition Control			

Trunk Fuses		
Fuse	Rating	Function
F1	5A	Convertible deck lid lock motors (Volante)
F2	20A	Not available
F3	30A	Heated rear windshield
F4	20A	Rear quarter glass motor (left side (Volante))
F5	30A	Audio amplifier
F6	20A	Rear quarter glass motor (right side (Volante))
F7	5A	Not available
F8	30A	Fuel pump module (Bank B)
F9	30A	Fuel pump module (Bank A)
F10	30A	Convertible Roof module (Volante)
F11	20A	Not available

Trunk Fuses		
Fuse	Rating	Function
F12	20A	Transmission control module (Automatic)
F13	10A	Not available
F14	5A	Not available
F15	5A	Transmission control module (Automatic)
F16	30A	Convertible Roof pump (Volante)
F17	5A	Trunk lamps / Trunk power socket illumination
F18	30A	Audio amplifier
F19	5A	Not available
F20	10A	Not available
F21	30A	Convertible deck lid lock motors (Volante)
F22	20A	Exhaust by-pass valve and vacuum pump

Bulbs

Bulb Kit

Any bulb used from the kit should be replaced at the earliest opportunity so that a full bulb kit is always available.

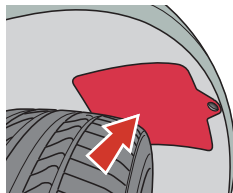
Specification	Type
Main beam	12V 65W (H9)
Front direction indicators	12V 27W (3457 AK)
Footwell lamp	12V 5W (W5W)
Licence plate / Door lamp	12V 5W (WC5W (Festoon))

 **Headlamp Units: Condensation.** The headlamp units will generate condensation under certain conditions. However, this should clear after approximately 10 minutes.

Headlamp Bulbs

Access to the headlamp bulbs is through an access panel in each wheel arch liner.

Turn the steering to the opposite lock from the headlamp unit with the defective bulb. Using a flat blade, i.e. a screwdriver or a small coin, release the screw on the access panel. Remove the access panel.

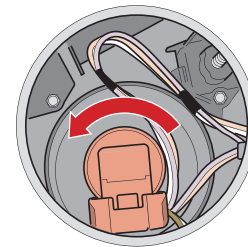
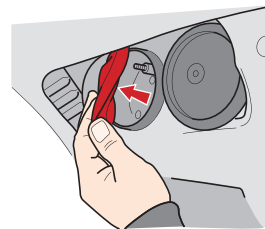


Main Beam Bulb

Warning

** Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.*

1. Remove the rubber cover.
2. Rotate the headlamp bulb unit a quarter turn counterclockwise. Withdraw the unit and disconnect the wiring harness plug.



3. Connect a new bulb unit, insert the new bulb unit and turn a quarter turn clockwise to lock. Install the rubber cover and access panel.

Dipped Beam Bulb

Warning

** High Intensity Discharge (HID) bulbs produce a very high voltage. They should only be serviced by an Aston Martin Dealership.*

High Intensity Discharge (HID) bulbs are used for dipped beam.

HID systems produce a brilliant white light by establishing a high-voltage electrical arc between two electrodes within a sealed glass tube. Once the arc is established, the voltage lowers to normal operating conditions.

HID bulbs are not renewable. Refer to your Aston Martin Dealer if a HID bulb fails to operate.

Front Indicator, Parking and Side Marker Lamps

If a front indicator, parking lamp or a side marker lamp bulb fails to operate, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Licence Plate Lamps

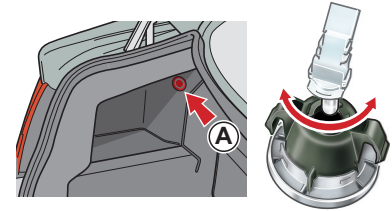
1. Lever the lamp unit from the licence plate side pod.
2. Remove the defective bulb from its holder and replace with a new one.
3. Push and clip the lamp unit back into position.



Trunk Lamp

1. Taking care not to damage the vehicle trim, lever out the lens unit (A).
2. Twist, counterclockwise, and remove the bulb holder. Replace the defective bulb.
3. Install the bulb holder and clip the lens unit into its housing.

Bulb specification - (Refer to 'Bulbs', page 12.7)



Rear Lamps

The Indicators, Stop and Tail, Reversing and Rear Fog LEDs are contained in a sealed lamp cluster unit, one either side of the vehicle. The lamp cluster is not repairable.

The high level mounted stop lamp unit consists of LEDs and is not repairable. If a rear lamp fails contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

 *LEDs can last tens of thousands of hours and are resistant to heat, cold, shock and vibration.*

Interior Lamps

- 1 Map
- 2 Rear Environment
- 3 Footwell
- 4 Door

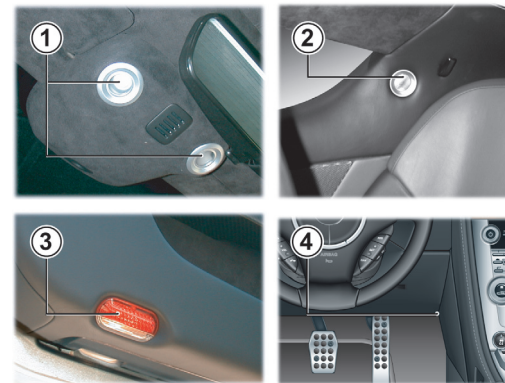
1. Taking care not to damage the vehicle trim, lever out the lens unit.

2. Replace the defective bulb.

Door lamp only: Open the access flap and replace the defective bulb

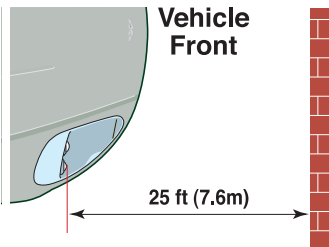
3. Press the lens unit into its housing until it clips into position.

Bulb specification - (Refer to 'Bulbs', page 12.7).



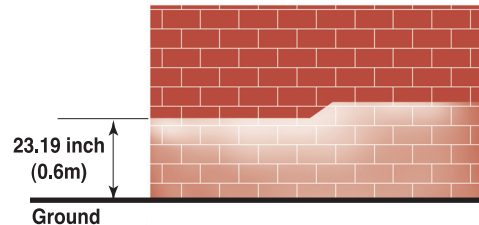
Headlamp Alignment

Headlamp aim check and adjustment must be completed with the vehicle parked on a flat surface facing a vertical wall at a distance of 25 ft (7.6 m) to the outboard internal lens, with no additional loads in the vehicle.



Check

1. Switch ON the dipped beam, ensuring that only the outer lamp each side is ON.
2. Measure the height of the left side of the beam pattern projected onto the wall. This should measure 23.19 in. (0.60 m) from the ground for a correctly aimed lamp. This must be completed for both right and left headlamps.



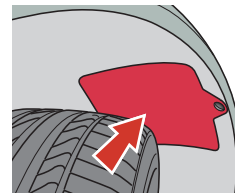
Adjustment

⚠ Warnings

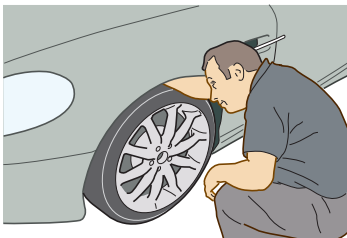
- * **Never allow anyone to turn the steering wheel whilst working in the road wheel arch.**
- * **Never remove the bulb access caps without reading the bulb replacement instructions.**

Should either headlamp require adjustment:

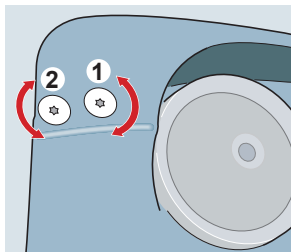
1. Remove the access panel. Turn the retaining screw 90° counterclockwise using a flat bladed screw driver or coin and pull out the access panel.



2. Adjust the headlamp aim by turning the adjusters using a T-20 torx driver.



- 1 Horizontal aim
- 2 Vertical aim



3. Replace the access panel by snapping into place and installing the retaining screw, and turning 90° clockwise.

Check the vertical beam angle by reversing the vehicle backwards 12 ft (3.6 m) and repeating the check procedure. The beam height should have reduced by 1 in (25 mm).

Door Window Reset

If power to the electric windows has been interrupted for any reason, they will fail to operate correctly until reset.

1. Sit in the driver's seat. Close both doors, insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON).
2. Press firmly and hold the window switch until the window is at the maximum down position. Continue to hold the button for five seconds then release.
3. Pull back and hold the window switch until the window is in the maximum up position. Continue to hold the switch for a further five seconds, then release.
4. The window is now reset. Repeat for the second window.

Checks and Maintenance

Door drain holes

Check the drain holes in the bottom face of each door periodically and clear if necessary with, i.e. a short length of wire or a pipe cleaner.

Paint Work

Modern water based paints are much safer and more environmentally friendly than solvent based paints. Water based paints are however more susceptible to contamination and marking by corrosive substances. The following list is not exhaustive but does indicate the most common contaminants which may adversely affect your paint work:



Other groups of contaminants may be added to this list as experience of water based paints and finishes increases.

- Bird Droppings
- Tree Sap
- Insect Remains
- Antifreeze
- Oils and Greases

Wash such substances from the vehicle using clean warm water with vehicle shampoo, at the earliest opportunity, especially in sunny weather which can accelerate contamination.

Washing

Warning

*** Washing and polishing agents containing silicone should not be applied to glass. This will reduce the efficiency of the wipers, causing smears which will reduce visibility, particularly during darkness and in the rain.**

Commercially operated automatic vehicle washes, jet washes and power operated mops are not recommended. The detergents used are, generally, of a high PH content which may, over time, damage the vehicle paint work.

Prolonged usage of automatic vehicle washes and power operated mops will also cause fine scratches in the paint surface.

For best results, do not wash the vehicle in strong sunlight. Allow the vehicle to cool before washing. Do not use household soaps or detergents. Do not direct hoses at full force around the door and trunk lid seals.

When washing the vehicle, first hose it down first to remove all dust and mud residue.

When dust and mud have been removed wash gently with a soft sponge using cold or warm water with a mild neutral detergent as directed by the manufacturers.

Rinse thoroughly with a hose to remove all traces of soapy water. Finally dry with a chamois leather, which should be rinsed regularly in clean water.

To delay the onset of corrosion developing on the brake components Aston Martin recommend that after washing this vehicle, the vehicle should be driven a short distance to make sure that all water and washing product has dried off.

Wash and clean the vehicle's front grill in the same way as the paint work, but make sure that the front grill is dried off completely leaving no water droplets on the grill (wipe the front grill last using a chamois leather): Chrome polish or other abrasive cleaners must not be used.

Aston Martin recommends the use of 'AUTOGLYM' vehicle care products or preparations of similar reputable manufacture for adding to the washing water.

During the winter months, it is advisable to wash the vehicle more frequently, paying particular attention to the underside to combat the detrimental effects of any salt and sand contamination picked up from treated roads.

Road Wheels

To avoid possible damage to the alloy road wheels, wheel nuts & wheel centre trims, from a build up of brake dust wash and clean the alloy road wheels frequently, using a mild soapy water solution only. Do not use chemical alloy road wheel cleaners, as they can often have a high acid or alkaline content and could cause discolouration. Always clean one wheel at a time and do not allow the cleaning solution to dry on the wheel. Fully flush off with clean water.

Polishing

Approximately twice a year, a good quality polish should be applied and then buffed, using a soft lint-free cloth.

Convertible Roof Fabric (Volante)

! Do not use automatic vehicle washes. Brushes, detergents and pressurized water jets may damage the Roof fabric.

! Do not use power washers. Jets of water may damage the weather seals and the Roof fabric.

! Do not use spot cleaners, chemical diluents or any organic cleaners. If in doubt, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

To maintain the appearance and condition of the Roof fabric the cleaning and reproof recommendations given below should be followed. This is of particular importance in the case of light colored Roof fabrics.

 Do not leave the Roof in the opened (folded) position for longer than necessary. In certain circumstances permanent soiling along folds may occur.

Cleaning

Carefully vacuum clean the Roof fabric to remove any loose particles. Gently, and evenly, wash the Roof fabric using a mild soap solution and a soft brush.

Rinse the Roof fabric thoroughly with clean water to remove any traces of soap. Allow the Roof fabric to completely dry before operating the Roof.

 *Remove bird droppings as soon as possible. The organic acids in bird lime can adversely affect the Roof fabric.*

 *A hard brush will damage the fabric fibres.*

Reproofs

Due to its construction the Roof fabric will stay watertight without re-proofing. However to retain the appearance of the Roof, to reduce soiling and to improve the drying time Aston Martin recommended that the Roof is re-proofed annually, by your Aston Martin Dealer.

Upholstery, Carpets and Seats

The seats and soft trimmed components of this vehicle are covered in natural leather hide.

In general, this natural leather upholstery requires little attention. The seats should be brushed with a soft brush from time to time and may be cleaned occasionally with a cloth damped in soap and water. **Do not** use detergents, quick cleansers or furniture polishes.

Several times a year, a leather conditioner or preservative should be used. Appropriate care materials are obtainable from your Aston Martin Dealer.

Warning

**** Fumes from cleaning solvents may be dangerous in confined spaces. Make sure that the vehicle is well ventilated and follow the manufacturer's printed instructions when using these products***

Alcantara roof linings and other soft trimmed areas may be brushed with a soft brush. Stains from water based substances such as coffee, tea or soft drinks should be cleaned as soon as possible with mild soap and water. Please consult your Aston Martin Dealer for instructions on the removal of more difficult stains such as oil, grease or ballpoint ink.

Carpets should be cleaned regularly with a vacuum cleaner. Any stains or grease marks should be removed with a good quality solvent suitable for use on carpets.

Care and Maintenance of Seat Belts

⚠ Do not allow seat belts to be retracted until they are completely dry.

To make sure that restraint webbings are in proper working order, regularly check the seat belts. Look for fraying, cuts, burns and similar problems. Make sure that the latches and buckles function correctly. If a seat belt is not in good condition or is not working properly, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Any seat belt that has been worn during a serious collision should be replaced by an Aston Martin Dealer.

To clean the seat belts, use mild soap and water; do not use bleach, solvents or dyes as they can weaken the material. Allow the seat belts to dry thoroughly before use.

Under Hood Cleaning

Under hood cleaning using high pressure hoses or steam cleaners should not be carried out. The electronic control module connections and fuse boxes can be damaged by indiscriminate use of high pressure cleaning equipment.

Vehicle Storage

Recommendations

 *These recommendations apply to new and pre-owned cars either in Dealer or Customer ownership.*

If your vehicle is not to be used for periods in excess of three months it should be stored in a dry, well ventilated building.

1. Drive your vehicle for a sufficient distance to warm the oil in the engine and the transaxle; this makes sure of complete lubrication of the internal components.
2. Check the engine coolant level. Top up if necessary with the correct antifreeze and water solution.
3. In order to take the weight off the tires, raise the vehicle with a jack and place supports under the front and rear suspension.

4. If the vehicle is not raised from the ground, increase the tire pressures to 50 psi (3.4 bar, 340 kpa). Cover the tires to exclude any light. Rotate the wheels ¼ turn every month to avoid tire flat spots.

5. **Volante only.**

Close the Roof.

 *Do not leave the Roof in the opened (folded) position for longer than necessary. In certain circumstances permanent soiling along folds may occur.*

6. If mains power is available, connect and switch the battery conditioner ON to maintain the battery in a fully charged state. If mains power is not available, press the Battery Disconnect Switch to reduce quiescent drain to a minimum.

7. Once a month:

- 7.1 Disconnect the Battery Conditioner (if in use).
- 7.2 Start and run the engine until it is fully warmed up.
- 7.3 Check there are no fluid leaks.
- 7.4 Switch the ignition OFF.
- 7.5 Connect the Battery Conditioner or press the Battery Disconnect Switch.
- 7.6 Check and correct tire pressures if necessary.

When returning the vehicle to normal service, set the tire pressures to normal specification before driving on the road.

Extended Storage

For storage periods exceeding six months the following measures are recommended;



Do Not Drain Fuel System.

1. Run the engine until there is as small a quantity of fuel in the tank as is practical for storage purposes.
2. Add engine oil to the remaining fuel in the tank to make sure of a concentration of 2% (i.e. 20ml per 1 liter of fuel), then run engine for not less than ten minutes to circulate mixture thoroughly through the entire fuel system.
3. Inspect rubber connections of coolant system and have them renewed if necessary.

4. Wash the vehicle bodywork thoroughly and repair any paint blisters or patches of corrosion in order to prevent any further deterioration.
Apply a suitable polish.
5. Clean the carpets and upholstery thoroughly. Treat all leather upholstery with an application of a leather conditioner or preservative.
6. If the storage building is dry leave vehicle windows slightly open. If there is any tendency towards dampness close vehicle doors and windows and place an anti-moisture compound such as Silica desiccant bags in an open metal container inside vehicle.
7. Cover vehicle with a cotton or fabric cover.

Re-commissioning after Storage

Provided that the vehicle has been stored in accordance with the recommended procedure, the following points only should require attention before using your vehicle on the road.

1. Check the tire pressures, inflate if necessary, lower the vehicle to ground.
2. Drain the engine sump and the final drive unit, install a new engine oil filter element, then fill the engine and the final drive unit with approved oils. Check the coolant level and, if necessary, top-up with the correct antifreeze to water solution.
3. Check all fluid levels and top-up as necessary. Fill the fuel tank.

! Starting the engine without sufficient lubrication can cause serious engine damage. Make sure engine oil pressure is established before allowing the engine to start.

4. Obtain engine oil pressure:
 - 4.1 Press and hold the accelerator **hard to the floor** (this will temporarily inhibit the fuel injection during cranking).
 - 4.2 Fully press the brake (automatic) or clutch (manual) pedal down. Insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control and move through to engine start. Allow the engine to crank until the oil pressure symbol () (on the instrument pack) extinguishes, indicating oil pressure in the engine.
 - 4.3 Release the vehicle key and accelerator pedal.

5. Start the engine normally and check that the oil pressure and ignition warning symbols go OFF as the engine starts, indicating correct oil pressure and battery charging.
6. Raise the hood and check for leaks of fuel, oil and coolant.
7. **Volante only.**

Check the operation of the Roof and check for oil leaks. If the Roof does not operate correctly during first use, operate the Roof a few times (with the engine running to keep the battery at full voltage). If the Roof still does not operate correctly contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

8. Carefully test drive your vehicle and check the operation of all functions.

Braking performance can be impaired, initially, due to a fine film of corrosion on the brake rotor surface. Drive conservatively and, when **safe to do so**, frequently apply the brakes until rotor surfaces have been cleaned. Full braking performance should then be restored.

If in any doubt about the condition of your vehicle, have it checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.



ASTON MARTIN

Specifications

Contents

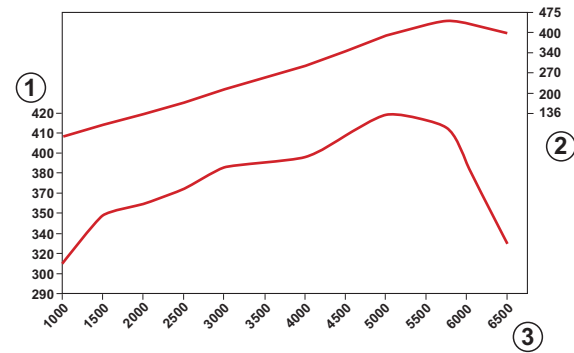
Engine	12.2	Bulbs.....	12.7
Performance	12.2	Vehicle Specification	12.7
Power and Torque Graph	12.3	Exterior Dimensions	12.8
Electrics	12.3	Vehicle Weights	12.11
Transmission	12.4	Interior Dimensions.....	12.11
Steering	12.4	Exterior Features	12.11
Suspension.....	12.5	Interior Features	12.12
Brakes.....	12.5	Fluids	12.12
Wheels	12.5	Capacities	12.14
Tires	12.6		

Engine				Performance	
All alloy, quad overhead cam 48 valve V12		Compression Ratio	10.2:1	Manual Transmission	
Fuel	Recommended Premium Unleaded Gasoline 93 Octane (R+M)/2 for optimum performance 91 Octane (R+M)/2 Premium Unleaded Gasoline minimum	Ignition	'Coil on Plug' ignition system	Max Power	470 bhp (350.5 kw) @ 6000 rpm
Fuel Delivery System	Multi-point sequential fuel injection	Emission control	Eight Oxygen sensors (four per exhaust branch) 2 three way catalytic convertors (one per exhaust branch) Evaporative loss purge	Max Torque	442.5 lb/ft (600 Nm) @ 5000 rpm
Capacity	5935 cc	Lubrication	Wet sump pressurized lubrication	Max Speed	
Firing Order	1 - 7 - 5 - 11 - 3 - 9 - 6 - 12 - 2 - 8 - 4 - 10			Coupe	190 mph (305 km/h) (where permitted)
Idle Speed	750 rpm			Volante	190 mph (305 km/h) (where permitted)
Bore	3.504 in. (89.0 mm)			0-60 mph	4.6 seconds
Stroke	3.13 in. (79.5 mm)			0-100 km/h	4.8 seconds
Spark Plugs	NGK - PTR6E-13			Max Engine Speed	7200 rpm
Spark Plug Gap	0.05 in. (1.3 mm) (± 0.004 in. (0.1 mm)				

Automatic Transmission

Max Power	470 bhp (350.5 kw) @ 6000 rpm
Max Torque	442.5 lb/ft (600 Nm) @ 5000 rpm
Max Speed	
Coupe	190 mph (305 km/h) (where permitted)
Volante	190 mph (305 km/h) (where permitted)
0-60 mph	4.3 seconds
0-100 km/h	4.5 seconds
Max Engine Speed	6850 rpm

Power and Torque Graph



- 1 Torque (lb/ft)
- 2 Power (bhp)
- 3 Engine speed (rpm)

Electrics

Alternator	Denso SC2 200 Amps
Voltage Regulation	14.4V $\pm$ 0.5V @ 68°F (20°C)
Battery	Varta 90AH.

Transmission

Automatic Transmission

ZF 6HP26 six speed with 'Shift by Wire' (SBW) gear shift technology.

Gear Ratios	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th
	4.17:1	2.34:1	1.52:1	1.14:1	0.87:1	0.69:1
	Reverse					
	3.40:1					

Manual Transmission

Graziano six speed transmission with integrated shifter bellcrank system (cable operated)

Gear Ratios	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th
	3.15:1	1.97:1	1.44:1	1.15:1	0.94:1	0.76:1
	Reverse					
	2.39:1					

Final Drive

	Manual	Automatic
Ratio	3.54:1	3.15:1
Limited slip differential.		

Steering

Rack and pinion, servotronic speed-sensitive power-assisted steering. Column tilt and reach adjustments.

Turns lock to lock	3.0	
Turning Circle	37.5 ft (11.5 m) (Curb to Curb)	
Toe-In	Front	0.08° (± 0.07°) (5' (±4'))
	Rear	0.33° (+ 0.17° / – 0.0°) (20' (+10' / - 0.0'))
	With the vehicle at its design weight. Refer to your Aston Martin Dealer.	

Suspension		Brakes	Wheels
Front	Aluminum independent double wishbone incorporating anti-dive geometry. Coil over aluminum monotube dampers and anti-roll bar.	Ventilated and grooved steel rotors all round.	⚠ Warning <i>* Install winter wheels and tires to both axles before the start of severe winter weather conditions.</i>
		Front Rotors 14 in. (355 mm) diameter	
		Rear Rotors 13 in. (330 mm) diameter	
		Calipers Radial-mounted four-piston monobloc.	
Rear	Aluminum independent double wishbone incorporating longitudinal control arms, coil over aluminum monotube dampers and anti-roll bar.	Parking brake Lever and cable operated independent parking brake callipers on each rear brake rotor.	Standard Wheels
		Anti Lock Braking System (ABS), Electronic Brakeforce Distribution (EBD), Emergency Brake Assist (EBA), Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) and Traction Control (TCS).	Front Aston Martin aluminum alloy wheels, 8.5J x 19 Rear Aston Martin aluminum alloy wheels, 9.5J x 19
			SportPack Wheels
			Front Lightweight forged aluminium alloy wheels, 8.5J x 19" Rear Lightweight forged aluminium alloy wheels, 9.5J x 19"

Winter Wheels

Front	Aston Martin aluminum alloy wheels, 8 x 18
Rear	Aston Martin aluminum alloy wheels, 9 x 18

Wheel Nut Torque

Tighten every second nut until all five nuts are tightened. Tighten all wheel nuts in two stages.

1. To 60 lb/ft (80 Nm) in one continuous movement.
2. To 133 lb/ft (180 Nm) in one continuous movement.



Tires

Warning

*** Install winter wheels and tires to both axles before the start of severe winter weather conditions.**

Tires installed to this vehicle shall have a maximum load rating not less than 1389 lb. (630 kg) (front) and 1565 lb. (710 kg) (rear), or a load index of 92 (front) and 96 (rear) and a speed category of ZR.

 *The Original Equipment tires installed to this vehicle are an approved specification, designated by 'AM9' on the sidewall.*

Front	Bridgestone RE050 235/40 ZR 19
Rear	Bridgestone RE050 275/35 ZR 19

Pressures (Cold Inflation)

Front	36 psi (2.5 bar / 250 kPa)
Rear	38 psi (2.6 bar / 260 kPa)

Winter Tires

Warning

*** Maximum speed with winter tires is 150 mph (240 km/h).**

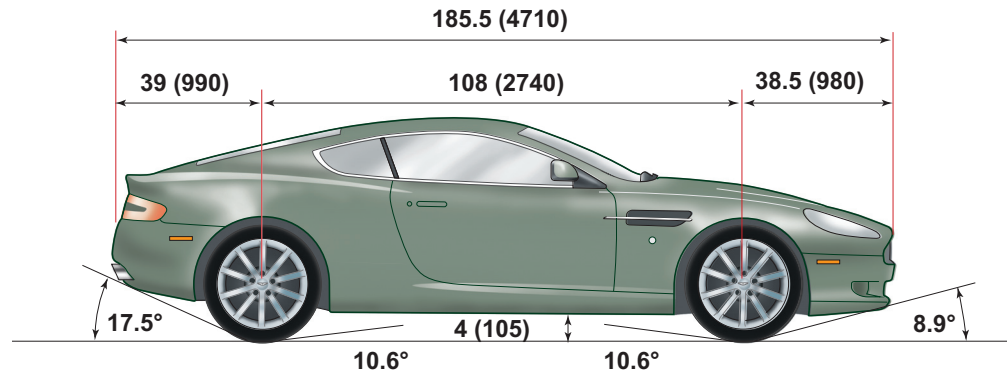
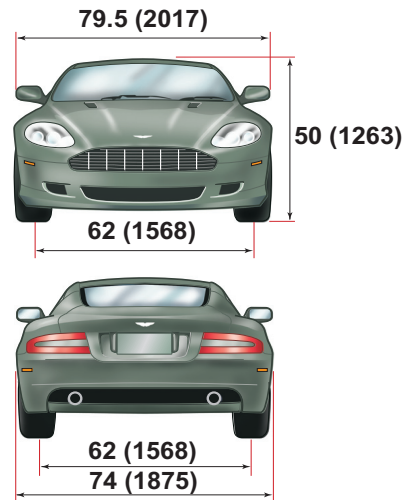
Front	Pirelli W240SN 225/45 R18
Rear	Pirelli W240SN 255/40 R18

		Bulbs		Vehicle Specification
Pressures (Cold Inflation)			Rating	Type
Front	36 psi (2.5 bar / 250 kPa)	Headlamp dipped beam	35W	D1S HID
Rear	36 psi (2.5 bar / 250 kPa)	Headlamp main beam	65W	H9
Snow chains may only be installed to the driven (rear) road wheels. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer.		Front Indicator lamps	27W	3457 AK
		Parking lamp / Footwell lamps	5W	W5W
		Door lamps	5W	C5W
		Side Repeater	5W	WY5W
Tire Ratings		Side marker (front and rear) / Rear quarter lamps / Trunk lamp / Reading lamps	3W	W3W
Treadwear	180	High Mounted Stop Lamp		LED
Traction	Traction AA	Licence plate lamps	5W	C5W
Temperature	A	The rear lamp cluster is a sealed unit. If any rear cluster lamp fails to operate contact your Aston Martin Dealer.		
		Body - Two door Coupe with 2+2 seating - Two door Volante with 2+2 seating Extruded aluminum bonded body structure with aluminum and composite body panels. Extruded aluminum door side impact beams.		
		Towing This vehicle is not engineered to tow any form of caravan, boat or trailer. No towing devices are approved for installing to this vehicle, other than a front towing eye to aid recovery or loading of this vehicle onto a transporter.		

Exterior Dimensions

Specifications

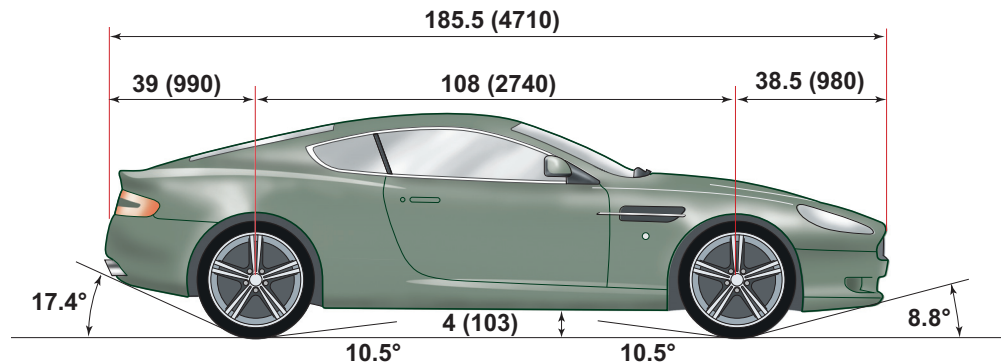
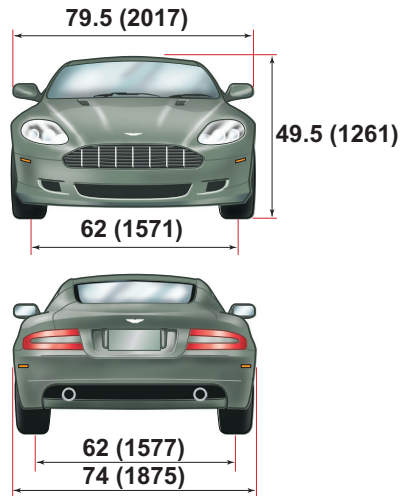
Coupe



In (mm).

Ride height is measured at GVW.

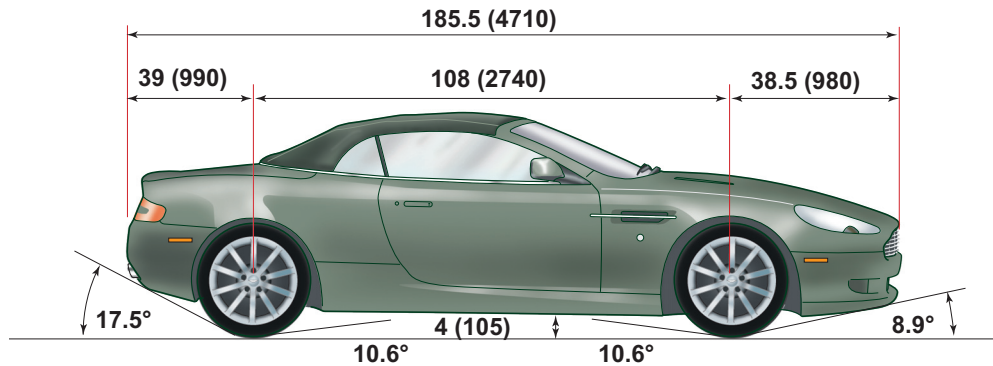
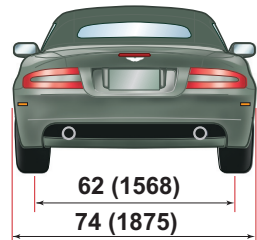
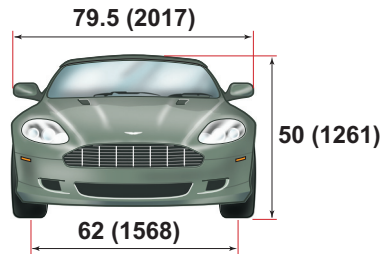
Coupe SportPack



In (mm).

Ride height is measured at GVW.

Volante



In (mm).

Ride height is measured at GVW.

The minimum headroom required to open or close the Convertible Roof is 60 in (1531 mm).

Vehicle Weights			Interior Dimensions			Exterior Features		
Curb Weight			Effective Headroom			• Door mirrors • Heated, electrically adjusted • Position memory system • Powerfold system • Auto fold system • Electrically operated door windows • Heated rear window • Reversing Sensors		
	Manual	Automatic	Coupe	Front	36.7 in (932 mm)			
Coupe	3880 lb (1760 kg)	3970 lb (1800 kg)		Rear	31.3 in (796 mm)			
	Manual	Automatic	Volante	Front	36.3 in (921 mm)			
Volante	4000 lb (1815 kg)	4090 lb (1855 kg)		Rear	31.5 in (800 mm)			
Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)			Shoulder Room		Front		54.8 in (1392 mm)	
	Manual	Automatic			Rear		47.2 in (1200 mm)	
Coupe	4540 lb (2060 kg)	4630 lb (2100 kg)	Hip Room		Front		55.5 in (1410 mm)	
Volante	4665 lb (2115 kg)	4750 lb (2155 kg)			Rear		48.9 in (1242 mm)	
Trunk Maximum Load			Effective Legroom		Front		43 in (1086 mm)	
88 lb (40 kg) evenly distributed					Rear		27.4 in (695 mm)	
			Trunk Volume					
			Coupe		6.6 cu/ft (186 ltr)			
			Volante		4.8 cu/ft (138 ltr)			

Interior Features

- Hand crafted leather trim
- Walnut fascia veneer (alternative options)
- Polished aluminum and painted alloy details
- Air-conditioning
- Alarm system interacting with the central locking system and PATS immobilizer system
- Driver and front passenger dual-stage airbags and front occupant side airbags
- Ten-direction electrically adjusted front seats (including height adjustment)
- Position memory front seats (including door rear view mirrors)

- Heated front seats (two heat levels)
- Organic electroluminescent (OEL) displays
- Infotainment centre
 - Aston Martin Audio system with radio, 6 CD autochanger and 700W power output with Dolby Pro Logic II
 - Bang & Olufsen Audio system with radio, 6 CD autochanger and 974W power output (option)
 - Hands-Free phone system
 - Menus for Audio, Hands-Free phone system, Satellite Navigation system, Vehicle Security
 - Hard Disk Drive (HDD) Satellite Navigation system

Fluids

Engine oil

Mobil 1 Recommended (0W-40) and (0W-30)

However, if these oils are not available, a fully synthetic 0w-30 or 0w-40 oil meeting the specifications detailed below can be used. No other viscosity grades or specifications are acceptable.

! To achieve the required high performance of synthetic lubricants, do not mix with mineral oils.

0W-30	
Authority	Standard
API	SL / SJ / EC / CF
ACEA	A1 / A5 / B1 / B5
ILSAC	GF3
0W-40	
Authority	Standard
API	SL / SJ / EC / CF
ACEA	A3 / B3 / B4
ILSAC	GF3

Only use oils 'Certified For Gasoline Engines' by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ISLAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.



Engine coolant	50% water, 50% Havoline OAT ⚠ Do not mix OAT anti-freeze with glycol based antifreeze.
Automatic transmission fluid	Shell ATFM 1375-4
Automatic transmission final drive oil	Castrol BOT270A _a
Manual gearbox oil and Final drive	Castrol BOT270A _b
Brake and Clutch fluid	Castrol Super Response Dot 4
Power steering fluid	Texaco Cold Climate
A/C refrigerant	HFC134A

^{a.} Only available from Aston Martin Dealers.
^{b.} Only available from Aston Martin Dealers.

Capacities

	Quarts (Liters)
Engine sump (incl. filter)	11.5 (11)
Engine cooling system	15.8 (15)
Screen washer reservoir	7.3 (6.9)
Power Steering reservoir	1.4 (1.3)
Automatic Gearbox and Cooler	10.2 (9.7)
Automatic final drive and Cooler	1.7 (1.6)
Manual Gearbox, Final drive and Cooler	5.3 (5.0)
	Gallons (Liters)
Fuel Tank	21 (80)
 Approximately 20.5 Gallons (78 liters) usable.	



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Service

Contents

Pre-delivery Inspection.....	A.2	Replacement of Airbag Units.....	A.15
Service Periods	A.4	Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners.....	A.15
Service Record.....	A.9	Field Service Actions	A.16
Anti Corrosion Inspection.....	A.12	Service Action Recalls.....	A.17

Pre-delivery Inspection

This free series of checks is carried out on the vehicle by the Selling Dealer before delivery. The checks make sure that you receive a vehicle which matches the high quality standards set by Aston Martin Limited.

Make sure that the entry is stamped and signed as completed. The following checks will be made:

(1) Levels and Leaks

Engine oil.	Windshield washer fluid.
Power steering oil.	Fuel system.
Brake and Clutch fluid.	Transaxle (leak check only).
Engine coolant level.	Battery.
Engine coolant specific gravity.	

(2) Mechanical Functions

Gear selection (manual).	Seat adjuster rails.
Clutch operation (manual).	Hood release and catch.
Throttle pedal operation.	Door operation and locks.
Parking brake operation.	Storage compartments.
Steering column adjustment and lock operation.	Rear view mirror.
	Trunk release and catch.

(3) Electrical Checks

Battery condition.	Infotainment centre operation (Audio, Satellite Navigation and Hands-Free phone).
Auto transmission gear selection functions.	
Heated rear window.	All speakers.
Windshield washers.	Reversing lamps.
Windshield wipers.	License plate lamps.
A/C controls.	Side and headlamps.

(3) Electrical Checks

Brake lamps	Interior lamps.
Hazard warning lamps.	Cigar lighter (option).
Instrument illumination and dimmer.	All seat functions.
Gauges and warning symbols.	Door window mechanisms.
Centre stack controls.	Door and trunk courtesy lamps.
Centre console controls.	Central locking system.
Horns.	Filler flap lock operation.
Reset clock (if necessary).	Door mirror adjustments.
Rear fog lamps.	Clutch pedal start inhibit (Manual).
Blower motor.	Brake pedal start inhibit (Automatic).
Seat belt warning system.	Interrogate DTC codes.
Security system and Vehicle key.	Record battery open-circuit voltage.

(4) Wheels and Tires		(6) Final Checks		Odometer: Applicable Service Actions checked: YES NO Open Service Actions completed: YES NO Dealer Stamp Free Pre-delivery Inspection Signature..... Date.....	
Install locking road wheel nuts (option). Check road wheel nuts torque. Tire pressures.	Tire orientation. Check color coded valve collars (Tire pressure monitoring)	Drive belt tensioner operation. Fuel and brake pipe security.	Fuel and fluid leaks. Security of cooling hoses. Exhaust catalyst security.		
(5) Road Test		(7) Hand-over Preparation			
Engine. Clutch (Manual). Transaxle. Steering. Brakes. Wheel balance. Dampers. Exhaust by-pass system.	Gear shift operation in all modes. Noise, vibration or harshness. A/C performance. Instruments operation. Seat belt and buckle operation. Steering wheel alignment. Traction control and DSC. ABS operation.	Check function of all locks and vehicle keys. Clean bodywork and road wheel arch liners. Inspect, rectify. Clean off all transit labels. Valet Vehicle. De-grease windshield.	Install carpets. Remove interior protection. Check Owner's Guide. Check tools. Install License plates. Tire sealant kit. Towing eye.		

Service Periods

Vehicle servicing is every 10,000 mile (16,000 km) or 12 months, whichever ever occurs first.

10,000 mile (16,000 km) or 12 month

20,000 mile (32,000 km) or 24 month

30,000 mile (48,000 km) or 36 month

12 Month To maintain the hydraulic brake system performance, the brake fluid is renewed every 12 months to clear the system of absorbed water vapor.

The following service schedules are recommended for this vehicle. The schedules may be modified if necessary. Please consult your Aston Martin Dealer for details of any service schedule updates.

10000mls 16000km 12 months	20000mls 32000km 24 months	
Pre-Maintenance		
x	x	Pre-Maintenance Road Test Evaluation
x	x	Install vehicle protection kit and fender covers
x	x	Check Bulletins, Field Service Actions and Recall status
x	x	Renew engine oil
x	x	Renew engine oil filter
x	x	Check for engine oil leaks
-	x	Renew air cleaner elements
x	-	Check manual transaxle for leaks. Top up if required

10000mls	20000mls
16000km	32000km
12 months	24 months

Fluids, Filters and Leaks Checks		
Every 60,000 mile (96,000 km) or six years	Every 100,000 mile (160,000 km) or ten years	Check and top up manual transaxle oil level
Every 40,000 mile (64,000 km) or four years		Renew manual transaxle oil. Clean filter
x	x	Check auto gearbox for leaks and top up if required
-	-	Check differential for leaks, top up if required (automatic)
-	x	Renew differential oil and clean the filter (automatic)
Every 100,000 mile (160,000 km) or five years		Renew engine coolant - check S.Gravity
x	x	Check and top-up engine coolant
x	x	Check cooling and heating systems for leaks
x	x	Check for fuel leaks

10000mls	20000mls
16000km	32000km
12 months	24 months

12 Month		Renew brake and clutch fluid
x	x	Check and top-up brake and clutch fluid reservoir
x	x	Check and top-up power steering reservoir
x	x	Check power steering system for leaks
x	x	Check brake hoses, pipes and unions for leaks
x	x	Check suspension dampers for leaks
x	x	Top-up windshield and headlamp washer reservoir
x	x	Check exhaust system for leaks
x	x	Check operation of exhaust by-pass valves
x	x	Check A/C system for leaks
-	x	Renew pollen filter

10000mls	20000mls
16000km	32000km
12 months	24 months

Mechanical Function Checks

x	x	Lubricate all door locks and hinges
x	x	Lubricate hood secondary catch
x	x	Check security of the hood catch. Check that the hood secondary catch moves freely over its whole travel and returns smartly under spring pressure.
x	x	Check and adjust drive belt tension, renew if necessary
x	x	Adjust parking brake cables, if required
x	x	Check parking brake security
x	x	Check condition of parking brake pads
x	x	Inspect brake pad wear and condition of rotors and callipers. Replace brake pads and wear warning leads if 60% worn
x	-	Check wiper blade inserts. Renew if necessary

10000mls	20000mls
16000km	32000km
12 months	24 months

-	x	Renew wiper blades
x	x	Inspect coolant radiator and A/C condenser. Clean if required
x	x	Check condition and operation of all seat belts
x	x	Check security of exhaust system mountings and heat shields
x	x	Check brake hoses, pipes and unions
x	x	Check power steering pipes and unions for corrosion and mechanical defects
x	x	Check security and condition of fuel hoses
x	x	Check cooling system hoses security and condition
x	x	Check A/C hoses security and condition

10000mls 16000km 12 months	20000mls 32000km 24 months		10000mls 16000km 12 months	20000mls 32000km 24 months	
x	x	Check condition and security of steering unit joints and gaiters	x	x	Check operation of ABS warning lamp
x	x	Check security and condition of suspension ball joints, gaiters and bushes	x	x	Check operation of all warning indicators
x	x	Check security and condition of suspension fixings	x	x	Check audible warnings including security system
-	x	Check tightness of driveshaft bolts	x	x	Check operation of the horns
x	x	Check interior rear view mirror for security and function	x	x	Check operation of the windshield wipers
-	x	Check the condition of wheel arch liners	x	x	Check exterior rear view mirrors for security and function
Electrical Function Checks			x	x	Check service interval indicator. Reset
Every 70,000 mile (112,000 km)		Renew spark plugs	x	x	Check and operate battery disconnect switch
x	x	Check and record battery voltage	x	x	Check and operate electric windows
x	x	Clean and grease battery connections	x	x	Check and operate powerfold mirrors
-	x	Check and if necessary adjust headlamp alignment	x	x	Check windshield washers and jets
x	x	Check operation of all lamps			

10000mls	20000mls
16000km	32000km
12 months	24 months

Wheels and Tire Checks

x	x	Check for correct tire size, type and orientation
x	x	Check color coded valve collars for correct location (Tire pressure monitoring)
x	x	Check and report tire tread depth
x	x	Check tires for uneven, excessive wear or damage
x	x	Check and adjust tire pressures
x	x	Check torque of road wheel nuts
x	x	Check road wheel rims for inner and outer damage.
x	x	Check operation of tire pressure sensors
x	x	Check 'use by' date of tire repair kit

Anti Corrosion Check

x	x	Check body panels and underbody for corrosion starting from the inside - out (excluding stone chips).
---	---	---

10000mls	20000mls
16000km	32000km
12 months	24 months

Gear Change Modes (Automatic)

x	x	Auto
x	x	Sport
x	x	Touchtronic
x	x	Reverse

Final Checks

x	x	Degrease windshield
x	x	Carry out road test - including operation of all auto gearbox modes
x	x	Check ABS and Traction Control operation
x	x	Check operation of all seat belts and buckles
x	x	Check that fuel filler bowl rain drain is clear

Service Record

The following service records cover the regular services at 10,000 mile (16,000 km) or 12 months, which ever occurs first, intervals. Make sure that at each service the appropriate entry is stamped and signed as completed.

Vehicle Identification Number:

Date of Delivery:

Odometer:

Applicable Service Actions checked: YES NO

Open Service Actions completed: YES NO

Dealer Stamp

10,000 mile (16,000 km) or 12 month

Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:

Applicable Service Actions checked: YES NO

Open Service Actions completed: YES NO

Dealer Stamp

20,000 mile (32,000 km) or 24 month

Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:	Odometer:	Odometer:
Applicable Service Actions checked: YES NO	Applicable Service Actions checked: YES NO	Applicable Service Actions checked: YES NO
Open Service Actions completed: YES NO	Open Service Actions completed: YES NO	Open Service Actions completed: YES NO
Dealer Stamp 30,000 mile (48,000 km) or 3rd year Signature..... Date.....	Dealer Stamp 40,000 mile (64,000 km) or 4th year Signature..... Date.....	Dealer Stamp 50,000 mile (80,000 km) or 5th year Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:			Odometer:			Odometer:		
Applicable Service Actions checked	YES	NO	Applicable Service Actions checked	YES	NO	Applicable Service Actions checked	YES	NO
Open Service Actions completed	YES	NO	Open Service Actions completed	YES	NO	Open Service Actions completed	YES	NO
Dealer Stamp 60,000 mile (97,000 km) or 6th year Signature..... Date.....			Dealer Stamp 70,000 mile (113,000 km) or 7th year Signature..... Date.....			Dealer Stamp 80,000 mile (129,000 km) or 8th year Signature..... Date.....		

Service

DB9

Anti Corrosion Inspection

Date:

Date:

Date:

Odometer:

Odometer:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

**Anti Corrosion Inspection
12 Month**

Signature..... Date.....

Dealer Stamp

**Anti Corrosion Inspection
2nd Year**

Signature..... Date.....

Dealer Stamp

**Anti Corrosion Inspection
3rd Year**

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Date:

Date:

Odometer:

Odometer:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

**Anti Corrosion Inspection
4th Year**

Signature..... Date.....

Dealer Stamp

**Anti Corrosion Inspection
5th Year**

Signature..... Date.....

Dealer Stamp

**Anti Corrosion Inspection
6th Year**

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Date:

Date:

Odometer:

Odometer:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
7th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
8th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
9th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

**Anti Corrosion Inspection
10th Year**

Signature..... Date.....

Replacement of Airbag Units

Every 10 years from the date of vehicle registration, all airbag units must be replaced. To make sure that this is completed correctly and safely, this work should be carried out by your Aston Martin Dealership.

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

**Airbag Replacement
10 Year**

Signature..... Date.....

Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners

Every 10 years from the date of vehicle registration, all seat belt pre-tensioners must be replaced. To make sure that this is completed correctly and safely, this work should be carried out by your Aston Martin Dealership.

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

**Seat Belt Pre-Tensioners
Replacement
10 Year**

Signature..... Date.....

Field Service Actions								
Action No.	Date	Dealer	Action No.	Date	Dealer	Action No.	Date	Dealer

Service Action Recalls

[illegible]

ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Assistance

Contents

Aston Martin Roadside Assistance.....	B.2
---------------------------------------	-----



Aston Martin Roadside Assistance

In the event of a breakdown caused by a defect covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, the Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme will provide the Aston Martin owner with emergency roadside assistance at no cost. The scheme also provides the following benefits:

- Exclusive 24-Hour Toll-Free Assistance Line
- 24-Hour Emergency Towing
- 24-Hour Roadside Assistance
- 24-Hour Emergency Lockout Service (up to US \$100 per call out)
- Sign and Drive Service
- 24-Hour Emergency Trip Interruption Benefits
- 24-Hour Aston Martin Dealer Locator Service
- Repaired Vehicle Reunite Service
- Assistance Experience Survey Card

The Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme benefits provide for towing to the nearest approved dealer. Should the vehicle breakdown occur 150 or more miles (241 or more km) from the nearest approved dealer and 150 or more miles (241 or more km) from the primary residence of the owner or operator, the owner or operator is entitled to trip interruption benefits. Trip interruption benefits include lodging and meals for up to 2 nights, and alternative transportation. Trip interruption benefits are limited to a maximum of US \$500 per interruption.

The term of the Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme runs concurrent with the Aston Martin New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The plan does not cover the following:

- Rental fleet vehicles
- Breakdowns caused by accident, vandalism, racing or abuse
- Additional towing costs for towing to other than the nearest approved dealer to the breakdown site

Expenses for such items as entertainment, recreation, and non-essential goods and services are excluded from trip interruption benefits.

How Does the Plan Work?

The national toll-free assistance telephone number is shown on your Roadside Assistance Membership Card and on the label on the drivers side door pillar.

If your Aston Martin vehicle suffers a breakdown whilst driving, proceed as follows:

Have your Aston Martin Roadside Assistance Membership Card ready.

Call the toll-free number: **1- 888 - 59ASTON**. It is available 24 hours a day.

 *In the event of requiring roadside assistance, it may be beneficial to have the relevant telephone numbers entered into your telephone 'phone book'.*

Provide the Roadside Assistance Service Representative with:

- Your name
- The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), which is printed on your Roadside Assistance Membership Card. The VIN is also printed on a decal on the drivers side dashboard. This decal may be viewed from outside the car by looking in through the front windshield
- The vehicle location
- Where you are calling from, including a telephone number on which you may be contacted

The Roadside Assistance Service Representative will work with you to find the best solution to your concern.

Please stay with the vehicle until assistance arrives.

Further Information

See the separate brochure provided for full details of the Aston Martin Roadside Assistance scheme. The terms of the scheme may be changed without notice.



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Warranty

Contents

Aston Martin Warranties	C.2	How Do I Get Warranty Service?.....	C.15
New Vehicle Limited Warranty	C.4	How Do I Handle Emergency Repairs?	C.16
New Vehicle Limited Warranty Statement.....	C.5	What Replacement Parts Should I Use?	C.17
Wear and tear Items	C.6	Preserve Your Warranty.....	C.17
Corrosion Protection Warranty.....	C.9	State Warranty Enforcement Laws	C.18
Emissions Defect Warranty (Federal)	C.10	Owner Details.....	C.19
Emissions Performance Warranty (Federal)	C.10	Owner Warranty Transfer.....	C.21
California Emissions Warranties.....	C.13		

Aston Martin Warranties

This section contains information essential for the understanding of the Aston Martin warranties and for the implementation of any necessary Warranty rectification. It is recommended that you read this section with care to familiarize yourself with the benefits available under the various warranties.

Warranty Communications

Any Warranty communications should initially be addressed to your Aston Martin Dealer. If necessary, you may communicate with Aston Martin at the appropriate address listed.

Customer Service Manager
Aston Martin North America
9920 Irvine Center Drive
Irvine, CA 92618

Aston Martin Warranty Department
Aston Martin Lagonda Limited
Banbury Road,
Gaydon,
WARWICK
Warwickshire,
CV35 0DB,
England

Warranties

All Aston Martin warranties are issued by Aston Martin North America Inc., the sole authorized United States agent of Aston Martin vehicles, and cover only vehicles originally specified and built by Aston Martin for the United States and Canadian markets.

Aston Martin warranties are in favour of the original purchasers and each subsequent owner during the respective Warranty period.

Aston Martin warranties are effective and will be honoured only in the United States and Canada. Outside the United States and Canada, all Aston Martin Warranty service and repair will be performed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Aston Martin United Kingdom Warranty issued by the vehicle manufacturer.

The United Kingdom Warranty covers the vehicle (with some restrictions) for a period of three (3) years, unlimited mileage from the date of first retail delivery. Details of the U.K. Warranty will be provided upon request.

A summary of Aston Martin warranties applicable to this vehicle follows:

New Vehicle Limited Warranty

Bumper to bumper 3 years with unlimited mileage

Vehicle Corrosion Protection Warranty

Period of cover 10 years with unlimited mileage

Vehicle Emission Warranties (Federal)

Emissions Defects Warranty 2 years or 24,000 mile (38,500 km)

Certain emission parts^a 8 years or 80,000 mile (129,000km)

Emissions Performance Warranty 2 years or 24,000 mile (38,500 km)

^a. Catalytic convertor and electronic emissions control unit (required 8 years or 80,000 mile (129,000 km) coverage per Clean Air Act).

Vehicle Emission Warranties (Californian Vehicles)

Emissions Defect Warranty

Short Term	3 years or 50,000 mile (80,000 km)
Long Term ^a	7 years or 70,000 mile (113,000 km)

Emissions Performance Warranty 3 years or 50,000 mile (80,000 km)

^a. These specific parts were selected on the basis of their estimated replacement cost at the time your vehicle was certified by the California Air Resources Board (CARB) for sale in California.

New Vehicle Limited Warranty

Warranty Limitations

This New Vehicle Limited Warranty is the only express Warranty applicable to your vehicle. Aston Martin neither assumes, nor authorizes anyone to assume for it, any other obligation or liability in connection with this Warranty.

Limitation of Remedies

Under the Warranty, it is agreed that the sole exclusive remedy against Aston Martin and its authorized Dealers shall be for the repair or replacement of defective parts as provided herein. The sole purpose of this exclusive remedy shall be to provide for the free repair and replacement of defective parts in the manner prescribed in this Warranty.

This exclusive remedy shall not be deemed to have failed its essential purpose so long as Aston Martin, through its authorized Dealers, is willing and able to repair or replace defective parts in the prescribed manner.

Implied Warranties; Consequential Damages

Under the law of some states, the owner may be entitled to the benefit of the implied warranties of merchant ability or fitness for intended purpose. These implied warranties are limited to the extent allowed by law to the time period covered by the written warranties, or the applicable time period provided by state law, whichever period is shorter.

New Vehicle Limited Warranty Statement

Aston Martin does not accept responsibility under any of the warranties for any consequential damage or commercial loss to the owner, or any incidental expenses, loss of time, or inconvenience.

Some states do not permit a limitation on how long an implied Warranty will last, or on the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation may not apply to the owner. This Warranty gives owners specific legal rights, and they may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

Aston Martin warrants that during the Warranty period, if an Aston Martin vehicle is properly operated and maintained, repairs required to correct defects in materials or workmanship will be performed without charge; any component covered by this Warranty found to be defective in materials or workmanship, will be repaired, or replaced, without charge. Your Aston Martin Dealer will repair the vehicle with genuine approved Aston Martin parts.

Aston Martin and your Aston Martin Dealer are not responsible for any time that you lose, for any inconvenience you might be caused, for the loss of your transportation, or for any other incidental or consequential damages you may have.

The Warranty period for the vehicle begins on the date of first retail sale, or on the date of entry into demonstrator service whichever comes first.

Warranty Coverage

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty covers any original or OEM component of the Aston Martin vehicle that is defective during the basic Warranty period, with the exception of tires and items such as lubricants, normal maintenance items, regularly scheduled maintenance parts and labour.

The Warranty includes any part scheduled for routine replacement during the Warranty period only if it is defective. If a part fails at the same time it is due for replacement it is not covered by the Warranty.

Wear and tear Items

Items that are subject to wear and tear are generally divided into two categories, namely those specified for replacement or adjustment during scheduled maintenance and those that require replacement or adjustment dependent upon conditions of use.

Scheduled Maintenance Items

The items listed below are covered by the Vehicle Warranty up to the first scheduled change point that replacement or adjustment is required during scheduled maintenance operations.

- Drive Belts
- Spark Plugs
- Oil, air, pollen and fuel filters

 *The period of warranty cover for any item may not exceed the time and distance limitation of the vehicle warranty.*

Wear and Tear Items

The items listed below are recognized as having a limited service life or are subject to wear or damage. However, these items are covered by the vehicle warranty for up to one year or the first service, which ever occurs first.

- Wiper Blades
- All Light bulbs

 *Xenon headlamp bulbs and instrumentation illumination bulbs are covered by the full vehicle warranty.*

- Wheel alignment and balancing
- Adjustments, including but not limited to: headlamp and hinged panel adjustments, suspension tightening, steering geometry adjustments, emission and fuel systems checks and parking brake cable adjustments

- Remote transmitter batteries

 *Brake pads, brake rotors and other friction related components are not covered when replacement is due to wear and tear, but they are covered against manufacturing defects for the duration of the Vehicle Warranty.*

Consumables

Replacement or ‘top-up’ of consumable fluids, e.g. oils, anti-freeze, brake fluid, windshield wash solution and refrigerant, is only covered when they are used as part of a warranty repair.

What is Not Covered

Excluded Categories of Vehicle

The following categories of vehicle are excluded from the provisions of the Aston Martin warranties:

- Vehicles sold for hire
- Vehicles used for motor sport and track events.

Damage Caused by Accident, Alteration or Misuse.

Examples include, but not limited to:

- Damage caused by collision, fire, flood, theft, freezing, vandalism, riot, explosion, or objects striking the vehicle
- Misuse of the vehicle, such as driving over curbs, overloading, racing, or using the vehicle as a stationary power source

- Alteration or modification of the vehicle, including changes to the body, chassis, or components after the vehicle leaves the control of Aston Martin, tampering with the vehicle, tampering with the emission systems or with other parts that affect these systems
- Disconnection or alteration of the odometer, or where the actual mileage cannot be determined due to the odometer being inoperative for an extended period of time
- Use of contaminated or improper fuel or fluids or application of unauthorized chemicals by the customer

Damage Caused by Use or the Environment

Surface rust and deterioration of paint, trim, and appearance items that result from use or exposure to the elements are not covered.

Examples: • Stone chips, scratches • Lightning, hail damage • Dints or dents • Windstorm damage • Road salt, tree sap • Earthquake damage • Bird droppings • Water or flood damage Damage Caused by Failure to Maintain or Improper Maintenance Damage caused by failure to maintain the vehicle, improper maintenance of the vehicle, or using the wrong fuel, oil, lubricants, or fluids is not covered. Refer to the Owner Maintenance section for correct fluid levels, and for proper ways to maintain your vehicle.	Examples of important maintenance procedures that need to be done correctly are: • Oil changes • Cleaning and polishing • Oils, lubricants and other fluids • Engine tune-up • Oil & air filters • Wiper blades, brake pads or linings Other Items and Conditions Not Covered by This Warranty • Non-Aston Martin parts of your vehicle that are installed by retailers, body shops or manufacturers other than an Aston Martin Dealer • Damage to, or caused by, non-approved accessories such as alarms, telephones, etc.	• Damage to, or caused by, non-approved snow chains or towing devices • Vehicles titled as follows: dismantled, fired, flooded, junked, rebuilt, reconstructed, or salvaged • Service adjustments, wear items and alignments after one (1) year or 10,000 mile (16,000 km), whichever occurs first • Alternative fuels: Aston Martin does not recommend or approve of the use of Liquid Petroleum gas or Compressed Natural gas. Damage caused by the use of alternative fuels or fuel additives is not covered by the vehicle warranty

Extra-Warranty Adjustment

In order to maintain a high level of customer confidence and satisfaction with Aston Martin products, Aston Martin may periodically determine that certain service procedures are necessary, and will assume costs for same, in whole or in part, independent of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. When repairs to your vehicle are covered by the terms of one of these policy adjustments, your Aston Martin Dealer will advise you of the extent to which Aston Martin will pay either for parts, or for labour, or both. If you have a question regarding a possible extra-Warranty adjustment, an authorized Aston Martin Dealer or Aston Martin can provide the details when the year, model and vehicle identification number (VIN) are supplied.

Aston Martin reserves the right to make modifications in vehicles manufactured and / or sold by them at any time without incurring any obligation to make the same or similar modifications in vehicles previously manufactured and / or sold by them.

Corrosion Protection Warranty

The vehicles bodywork is protected by an Anti-Perforation Corrosion Warranty. Should any part of the bodywork of the Aston Martin motorcar be perforated by rust corrosion during the applicable warranty period, the panel(s) affected by the perforation will be repaired or replaced.

The term 'perforation' means a hole that is caused by corrosion that penetrates through a body panel from the inside.

Emissions Defect Warranty (Federal)

Under the Emissions Defect Warranty, Aston Martin provides coverage for 2 years or 24,000 mile (whichever occurs first).

During this coverage period, Aston Martin warrants that:

- Your vehicle or engine is designed, built, and equipped to meet - at the time it is sold - the emissions regulations of the U.S. EPA
- Your vehicle or engine is free from defects in factory-supplied materials or workmanship that could prevent it from conforming with applicable EPA regulations
- You will not be charged for repair, replacement, or adjustment of defective emissions-related parts (Refer to 'What is Covered', page C.11)

Under the Emissions Defect Warranty Aston Martin also provides coverage, including labor and diagnosis, for 8 years or 80,000 mile (whichever occurs first) for these emissions parts:

- Catalytic converter
- Electronic emissions control unit (PCM)
- Onboard emissions diagnostic device

Emissions Performance Warranty (Federal)

If your vehicle is registered in a state where the state or local government has an EPA-approved inspection and maintenance program, you may also be eligible for Emissions Performance Warranty Coverage for 2 years or 24,000 mile (whichever occurs first), if you meet certain conditions.

Under Emissions Performance Warranty Coverage, Aston Martin will repair, replace, or adjust - with no charge for labor, diagnosis, or parts - any emissions control device or system, if you meet all these conditions:

- You have maintained and operated your vehicle according to the instructions on proper care and scheduled maintenance in the Owner's Guide

- Your vehicle fails to conform, during the warranty coverage period of 2 years or 24,000 mile (whichever occurs first), to the applicable national EPA standards
- You are subject to a penalty or sanction under local, state or federal law because your vehicle has failed to conform to the emissions standards (A penalty or sanction can include being denied the right to use your vehicle.)
- Your vehicle has not been tampered with, misused, or abused

The Emissions Performance Warranty will not apply to your vehicle if:

- The diagnosis shows your vehicle will pass the applicable state or local government test using test procedures and standards set by the EPA

What is Covered

These parts are covered by both the Emissions Defect Warranty and the Emissions Performance Warranty.



Some items or equipment in this list may not be installed to this vehicle and therefore may not be applicable.

- Air and Fuel Feedback Control System and Sensor
- Altitude Compensation System
- Catalytic Converter
- Cold Start Enrichment System
- Controls for Deceleration
- Distributor Assembly
- Electronic Ignition System
- Electronic Engine Control Sensors and Switches

- Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) Valve, Spacer, Plate and Associated Parts
- Exhaust Heat Control Valve
- Exhaust Manifold and gasket
- Fuel Filler Cap and Neck Restrictor
- Fuel Injection System
- Fuel Injector Supply Manifold
- Fuel Tank
- Fuel Vapor Storage Canister, Liquid Separator and Associated controls
- Ignition Coil or Control Module
- Intake Manifold

- Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) System
- PCV System and Oil Filler Cap
- Engine Control Module
- Pulsed Secondary Air Injection Valve, Secondary Air Injection pump and Associated Parts
- Spark Control Components
- Spark Plugs and Ignition Wires
- Throttle Air Control By-pass Valve
- Throttle Body Assembly
- TWC Air Control Valve
- Volume Air Flow Sensor

Also covered by the two emissions warranties are all emissions-related bulbs, hoses, clamps, brackets, tubes, gaskets, seals, belts, connectors, and wiring harnesses that are used with components on the list of parts, above.

Parts Replaced on Regular Maintenance Schedules

These parts stay under warranty until, (a) the first replacement time that is specified under 'Service' in your Owner's Guide or, (b) the time or mileage limits of the Federal Defect and Performance warranties (whichever occurs first).

Aston Martin maintains a complete list of parts covered by emissions warranties. For more details about the specific parts covered by the Emissions Defect Warranty, contact Aston Martin or Aston Martin Lagonda (North America) Inc. (Refer to 'Warranty Communications', page C.2)

What is Not Covered?

Aston Martin may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed because of abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, unapproved modifications, or any items included in 'What Is Not Covered' (Refer to 'What is Not Covered', page C.7).

California Emissions Warranties

Your Warranty Rights and Obligations

(Applicable if your vehicle is certified for sale in California and registered in California, Massachusetts, or New York).

The California Air Resources Board and Aston Martin are pleased to explain the emission control system warranty on your Aston Martin vehicle. In California, new motor vehicles must be designed, built, and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards. Aston Martin must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed under 'Manufactures' Warranty Coverage', provided there has been no abuse, neglect, or improper maintenance of your vehicle.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the fuel injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter, and the engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors, and other emissions-related assemblies.

Where a warrantable condition exists, Aston Martin will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts, and labor.

Manufacturer's Warranty Coverage

For 3 years or 50,000 mile (80,000 km) (whichever first occurs):

- If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Aston Martin to make sure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your emission control system Performance Warranty
- If any emissions-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Aston Martin. This is your short-term emission control system Defects Warranty

For 7 years or 70,000 mile (113,000 km) (whichever first occurs):

- If an emission-related part (Refer to 'What is Covered?', page C.14) with coverage for 7 years or 70,000 mile (113,000 km) is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Aston Martin. This is your long-term emission control system Defects Warranty

Owner's Warranty Responsibilities

As the vehicle owner or lessee, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in your Owner's Guide. Aston Martin recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Aston Martin cannot deny warranty coverage solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to make sure of the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to an Aston Martin Dealer as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days.

Aston Martin may deny warranty coverage if the vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, or unapproved modifications.

If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and responsibilities, or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this warranty, you may contact Aston Martin Lagonda North America Inc. (Refer to 'Warranty Communications', page C.2) or the California Air Resources Board at:

State of California Air Resources Board
Mobile Source Operations Division
P.O. Box 8001
El Monte, California 91731-2990

What is Covered?

The parts on the following list are covered by the Defects warranties that apply to every California model vehicle from, and including, 2004.



Some items or equipment in this list may not be installed to this vehicle and therefore may not be applicable.

- Air and Fuel Feedback Control System and Sensor
- Altitude Compensation System
- Catalytic Converter
- Cold Start Enrichment System

		How Do I Get Warranty Service?
• Controls for Deceleration • Distributor Assembly • Electronic Ignition System • Electronic Engine Control Sensors and Switches • Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) Valve, Spacer, Plate and Associated Parts • Exhaust Heat Control Valve • Exhaust Manifold and gasket • Fuel Filler Cap and Neck Restrictor • Fuel Injection System • Fuel Injector Supply Manifold • Fuel Tank • Fuel Vapor Storage Canister, Liquid Separator and Associated controls	• Ignition Coil or Control Module • Intake Manifold • Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) System • PCV System and Oil Filler Cap • Engine Control Module • Pulsed Secondary Air Injection Valve, Secondary Air Injection pump and Associated Parts • Spark Control Components • Spark Plugs and Ignition Wires • Throttle Air Control By-pass Valve • Throttle Body Assembly • TWC Air Control Valve • Volume Air Flow Sensor	To get service under your emissions warranties, take your vehicle to any Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible after it has failed an EPA-approved test or a California Smog Check inspection. Be sure to show the dealer the document that says your vehicle has failed the test. The Aston Martin will decide whether the repair is covered by the warranty. If there is a question about coverage, the final decision must be made by Aston Martin within 30 days after you bring in your vehicle for repair (The decision will be made within a shorter time if the law requires you to have the vehicle repaired more quickly in order to avoid additional penalties). However, your Aston Martin Dealer does not have to meet the deadline if you request a delay or agree to a delay, or if the delay is caused by an event for which neither Aston Martin nor your Aston Martin Dealer is responsible.

You will be notified by Aston Martin in writing if your claim for warranty coverage is denied. The notice will explain the basis for denying your claim. If you fail to receive this notice, Aston Martin will perform the warranty repair for you free of charge.

How Do I Handle Emergency Repairs?

If your vehicle needs an emergency repair on emission related parts, and an Aston Martin Dealer is not available (so that you must have covered repairs made by someone other than a Aston Martin Dealer), Aston Martin will reimburse you for the cost of repairs, including diagnosis. Be sure to obtain, (a) the parts that are replaced and, (b) a receipt for the work. Take the parts and receipt to your Aston Martin Dealer, who will determine if the repair is covered under warranty.

You should follow the same procedure if a warranted part is not available at your Aston Martin Dealer within 30 days from the time you first bring your vehicle to your service point for repairs and you must go elsewhere for repairs.

Any repair not completed within 30 days also constitutes an emergency, and any equivalent replacement part may be used in an emergency situation. Aston Martin will reimburse you for the repair expenses, not to exceed: (a) the Aston Martin's suggested retail price for all warranted parts that are replaced and, (b) the labor charges (based on the Aston Martin's recommended time allowance for the warranty repair and the geographically appropriate hourly labor rate).

What Replacement Parts Should I Use?

Aston Martin recommends that you use genuine Aston Martin replacement parts. However, when you are having non-warranty work done on your vehicle, you may choose to use any parts.

If you decide to use non-Aston Martin parts, be sure that they are equivalent to Aston Martin parts in performance, quality and durability. If you use replacement parts that are not equivalent to Aston Martin parts, your vehicle's emissions control systems may not work as effectively, and you may jeopardize your emissions warranty coverage.

 *Federal Warranty Only: The maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices or systems, the cost of which is not covered by the warranties, can be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using non-Aston Martin parts*

For vehicles within the warranty period, Aston Martin will repair at no cost to the owner, under the Federal Emissions Warranty, covered emission failures caused by properly installed Aston Martin parts or non-Aston Martin parts that have been 'certified' by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Aston Martin is not responsible for the cost of repairing any emission failures caused by non-Aston Martin parts that have not been 'certified' by the EPA.

Preserve Your Warranty

If you do not maintain your vehicle properly, Aston Martin may have the right to deny you warranty coverage.

To have repairs made under this warranty, you may have to show that you have followed Aston Martin's instructions on properly maintaining and using your vehicle. You will find these instructions in your Owner's Guide. Be sure to save your service receipts and to keep accurate records of all maintenance work.

If you are not satisfied with the handling of a warranty matter, you may contact Aston Martin Lagonda North America Inc. (Refer to 'Warranty Communications', page C.2).

If you need more information about getting service under the Federal Emissions Performance Warranty, or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this warranty, you may contact:

Director
Vehicle Program and Compliance Division (6505J)
Environmental Protection Agency
401 M Street, S.W.
Washington, D.C. 20460

State Warranty Enforcement Laws

These state laws - sometimes called 'lemon laws' - allow owners to receive a replacement vehicle or a refund of the purchase price, under certain circumstances. The laws vary from state to state.

To the extent your state allows, Aston Martin requires that you first send us a written notification of any defects or non-conformities that you have experienced with your vehicle. (This will give us the opportunity to make any needed repairs before you pursue the remedies provided by your state's law).

In all other states where not specifically required by state law, Aston Martin requests that you give us the written notice.

Send your written notification to:

Customer Service Manager
Aston Martin North America
9920 Irvine Center Drive
Irvine, CA 92618
Main Phone: (949) 379-3100
Fax: (949) 379-3140

Owner Details

Name:

Address:

Zip Code:

Vehicle Details

Registration No.:

VIN No.:

Engine no.:

Warranty Start Date

Dealer Stamp

Signature.....Date.....

If the vehicle is sold, the benefits of any un-expired portion of the warranties can be transferred to the new owner.

The new owner should complete a 'tear off' sheet (next page) and send the new details to:

Aston Martin Warranty Department

Aston Martin Lagonda Limited

Banbury Road,

Gaydon,

WARWICK

Warwickshire,

CV35 0DB,

England

Warranty

DB9



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Owner Warranty Transfer (3)		Owner Warranty Transfer (2)		Owner Warranty Transfer (1)	
Registration No.:		Registration No.:		Registration No.:	
VIN No.:		VIN No.:		VIN No.:	
Recorded mileage: mile (km)		Recorded mileage: mile (km)		Recorded mileage: mile (km)	
Date of Purchase:		Date of Purchase:		Date of Purchase:	
Name:		Name:		Name:	
Address:		Address:		Address:	
Zip Code:		Zip Code:		Zip Code:	
Telephone No.:		Telephone No.:		Telephone No.:	
Signature		Signature		Signature	
Date		Date		Date	

Warranty





ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Owner Warranty Transfer (6)		Owner Warranty Transfer (5)		Owner Warranty Transfer (4)	
Registration No.:		Registration No.:		Registration No.:	
VIN No.:		VIN No.:		VIN No.:	
Recorded mileage: mile (km)		Recorded mileage: mile (km)		Recorded mileage: mile (km)	
Date of Purchase:		Date of Purchase:		Date of Purchase:	
Name:		Name:		Name:	
Address:		Address:		Address:	
Zip Code:		Zip Code:		Zip Code:	
Telephone No.:		Telephone No.:		Telephone No.:	
Signature		Signature		Signature	
Date		Date		Date	

Warranty

DB 9



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Dealer Directory

Contents

Australia	D.3	Holland	D.12	Russia	D.17
Austria	D.4	Hong Kong	D.12	Scotland	D.17
Belgium	D.4	Italy	D.13	Singapore	D.18
Canada	D.4	Japan	D.13	South Africa	D.18
Channel Islands	D.5	Middle East	D.14	Spain	D.18
China	D.5	Monaco	D.15	Switzerland	D.19
Denmark	D.6	New Zealand	D.16	United States of America	D.20
England	D.6	Northern Ireland	D.16	Wales	D.25
France	D.9	Norway	D.16		
Germany	D.10	Portugal	D.17		

This section lists all Aston Martin Dealers worldwide, where Sales and Service are provided by companies with the facilities, knowledge and factory trained personnel.

Whilst every effort is made to make sure of accuracy, changes amongst holders of the Aston Martin franchise may occur. Neither Aston Martin nor any listed Importer or Dealer shall in any circumstances be held liable for any inaccuracy, or the consequences thereof.

Dealers listed here all aim to conform to Aston Martin standards of excellence in both Sales and Service. However, all cars sold as Aston Martins are required to meet local legislation requirements.

Should service be required in a country other than that in which this vehicle was originally purchased, every effort will be made to meet the owner's requirements, but the availability of certain parts may be affected by differences in vehicle and component specifications. If the nearest Aston Martin Dealer is unable to help, contact Aston Martin directly:

Aston Martin Lagonda Limited

Banbury Road, Gaydon, WARWICK, CV35 0DB

Telephone: (+44) (0)1926 644644

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1926 644733

Web Site: www.astonmartin.com

E-Mail: enquiries@astonmartin.com

Aston Martin Dealers are independent traders, they are not the Company's Agents, and therefore have no authority to bind the Company or to enter into any financial or other commitments on the Company's behalf.

Only Aston Martin Dealers are authorized to carry out warranty work.

Australia		
Adelaide	Queensland	Victoria
Solitaire Aston Martin	Sunshine Aston Martin	Trivett Classic Aston Martin Melbourne
32 Belair Rd., Hawthorn, Adelaide, SA 5062	179 Nerang Road, Southport, Queensland, 4215	80 City Road, Southbank, Victoria 3006
Telephone: (+61) 8 8152 5100	Telephone: (+61) 7 5582 7888	Telephone: (+61) 3 8866 3111
Facsimile: (+61) 8 8152 5120	Facsimile: (+61) 7 5532 3361	Facsimile: (+61) 3 8866 3100
Web Site: www.solitaireauto.com.au	Web Site: www.sunshineastonmartin.com.au	Web Site: www.astonmartinmelbourne.com.au
E-Mail:	E-Mail: sales@sunshineastonmartin.com.au	E-Mail: astonmartin@trivett.com.au
Perth	Sydney	
Barbagallo Aston Martin	Trivett Classic Garage Pty. Ltd.	
354 Scarborough Beach Rd., Osborne Park, Perth, WA 6017	32–38 Yurong St., East Sydney, NSW 2010	
Telephone: (+61) 8 9231 5999	Telephone: (+61) 2 8338 3993	
Facsimile: (+61) 8 9242 3717	Facsimile: (+61) 2 8338 2169	
Web Site: www.barbagallo.com.au	Web Site: www.astonmartinsydney.com.au	
E-Mail: astonmartin@barbagallo.com.au	E-Mail: astonmartin@trivett.com.au	



Austria		Belgium		Canada	
Salzburg		Antwerp		British Columbia	
Aston Martin Salzburg		Aston Martin Antwerp		MCL Motor Cars (1992) Inc.	
Wasserfeldstraße 17a, 5020 Salzburg		Autolei 322, 2160 Wommelgem		1820 Burrard St., Vancouver, British Columbia, V6J 3H1	
Telephone: (+43) 662 887 8820		Telephone: (+32) (0) 3 354 3856		Telephone: (+1) 604 738 5577	
Facsimile: (+43) 662 887 882 88		Facsimile: (+32) (0) 3 354 5867		Facsimile: (+1) 604 738 7677	
Web Site: www.astonmartin.at		Web Site: www.astonmartin-antwerp.com		Web Site: www.astonmartinvancouver.com	
E-Mail: salzburg@astonmartin.at		E-Mail: info@astonmartin-antwerp.com		E-Mail:	
Vienna		Brussels		Ontario	
Aston Martin Wien		Aston Martin Brussels NV-SA		Aston Martin of Ontario	
Motorcity SCS, Autoallee 7, 2334 Vosendorf b. Wien		Borrestraat 23, St. Stevens-Woluwe, 1932		740 Dupont St., Toronto, Ontario, M6G 1Z6	
Telephone: (+43) 1 698 1200–0		Telephone: (+32) (0) 2720 4345		Telephone: (+1) 416 530 1880	
Facsimile: (+43) 1 698 1200–88		Facsimile: (+32) (0) 2720 8474		Facsimile: (+1) 416 530 4495	
Web Site: www.astonmartin.at		Web Site: www.astonmartin-brussels.com		Web Site: www.astonmartinofontario.com	
E-Mail: wien@astonmartin.at		E-Mail: info@astonmartin-brussels.com		E-Mail: sales@grandtouringautos.com	

	Channel Islands	China
Quebec	Jersey	Beijing
Decarie Motors	Jacksons (CI) Ltd.	Aston Martin Beijing
8255 Rue Bougainville, Montreal, Quebec, H4P 2T3	La Rue Fondon, St. Peter, Jersey, JE3 7BF	No 1 Jing Gang Lu, Chao Yang District, 100018
Telephone: (+1) 514 334 9910	Telephone: (+44) (0) 1534 497777	Telephone: (+86) 10 8433 3007
Facsimile: (+1) 514 336 0548	Facsimile: (+44) (0) 1534 497729	Facsimile: (+86) 10 8433 3737
Web Site: www.decarie.com	Web Site: www.jacksonsci.com	Web Site: www.astonmartin-china.com
E-Mail: sales@decarie.com	E-Mail: info@jacksons.je	E-Mail:
		Shanghai
		Aston Martin Shanghai
		No 1 Hua Fu Tian Di, 222 Alley, Madang Lu, Luwan District, 200020
		Telephone: (+86) 21 6387 6007
		Facsimile: (+86) 21 6387 3007
		Web Site: www.astonmartin-china.com
		E-Mail:



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Denmark	
Copenhagen	
Aston Martin Denmark	
Bryggervangen 39, PO 2630, DK-2100, Copenhagen Ø	
Telephone:	(+45) 369 00 945
Facsimile:	(+45) 392 72 250
Web Site:	www.aston-martin.dk
E-Mail:	hsw@astonmartin.dk



ASTON MARTIN

England	
Berkshire	
Lancaster Reading	
Bennet Rd., Reading, Berkshire, RG2 0QX	
Telephone:	(+44) (0)118 9658500
Facsimile:	(+44) (0)118 9658501
Web Site:	www.lancasterplc.com/reading/astonmartin
E-Mail:	astonmartin@reading.jardinemotors.co.uk

Buckinghamshire	
Aston Martin Lagonda Limited	
Works Service, Tickford St., Newport Pagnell, MK16 9AN	
Telephone:	(+44) (0)1908 619264
Facsimile:	(+44) (0)1908 216439
Web Site:	www.astonmartin.com
E-Mail:	service2@astonmartin.com

Stratstone of Amersham	
44 Woodside Rd., Amersham, Buckinghamshire, HP6 6AJ	
Telephone:	(+44) (0)1494 788360
Facsimile:	(+44) (0)1494 788379
Web Site:	www.stratstone.com
E-Mail:	amershamastonmartin@stratstone.com
Cambridgeshire	
Lancaster Cambridge	
High St., Harston, Cambridge, CB2 7TN	
Telephone:	(+44) (0)870 410 3848
Facsimile:	(+44) (0)1223 875675
Web Site:	www.lancasterplc.com/cambridge/astonmartin
E-Mail:	astonmartin@cambridge.jardinemotors.co.uk

Cheshire	Devon	Gloucestershire
Stratstone of Wilmslow	Grange of Exeter	Broughtons Aston Martin
Water Lane, Wilmslow, SK9 5BQ	Yeoford Way, Exeter, EX2 8LB	Rutherford Way, Cheltenham, GL51 9SQ
Telephone: (+44) (0)1625 548802	Telephone: (+44) (0)1392 678044	Telephone: (+44) (0)1242 232667
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1625 526873	Facsimile: (+44) (0)1392 678048	Facsimile: (+44) (0)1242 232668
Web Site: www.stratstone.co.uk	Web Site: www.grange.co.uk	Web Site: www.broughtons.co.uk
E-Mail: wilmslowastonmartin@stratstone.com	E-Mail: grangeastonmartinexeter@grange.co.uk	E-Mail: info@broughtonsastonmartin.co.uk
Derbyshire	Essex	Hertfordshire
Stratstone Aston Martin Derby	Grange Aston Martin	Grange of Welwyn
Sir Frank Whittle Rd., Derby, DE21 4LT	2 Brook St., Brentwood, CM14 5LU	Great North Rd., Stanborough, Welwyn Garden City AL8 7TQ
Telephone: (+44) (0)1332 258787	Telephone: (+44) (0)1277 249555	Telephone: (+44) (0)1707 280868
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1332 258799	Facsimile: (+44) (0)1277 249556	Facsimile: (+44) (0)1707 280869
Web Site: www.astonsales.com	Web Site: www.grange.co.uk	Web Site: www.grange.co.uk
E-Mail: derbyastonmartin@stratstone.com	E-Mail: GrangeAstonMartin.Brentwood@summitautogroup.co.uk	E-Mail:

Kent	Norfolk	Tyne and Wear
Lancaster Sevenoaks	Stratton Motor Company (Norfolk) Limited	Stratstone Tyne and Wear
114–115 London Rd., Sevenoaks, TN13 2DN	Ipswich Rd., Long Stratton, Norwich, NR15 2XJ	Stoneygate, Houghton le Spring, Tyne and Wear, DH4 4NJ
Telephone: (+44) (0) 844 668 0138	Telephone: (+44) (0)1508 530491	Telephone: (+44) (0) 191 512 3 512
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1732 465566	Facsimile: (+44) (0)1508 531670	Facsimile: (+44) (0) 191 512 3509
Web Site: www.lancasterplc.com/sevenoaks/astonmartin	Web Site: www.strattonmotorcompany.com	Web Site: www.stratstone.com
E-Mail: astonmartin@sevenoaks.jardinemotors.co.uk	E-Mail: astonsales@strattonmotorcompany.com	E-Mail:
London	Surrey	West Midlands
Stratstone of Mayfair	HWM Aston Martin	Stratstone Aston Martin Hagley
Brook House, Park Lane, London, W1K 7AJ	New Zealand Ave., Walton on Thames, KT12 1AT	94-96 Kidderminster Road, Stourbridge, DY9 0QL
Telephone: (+44) (0)20 7235 8888	Telephone: (+44) (0)1932 240611	Telephone: (+44) (0) 1562 888 380
Facsimile: (+44) (0)20 7629 5376	Facsimile: (+44) (0)1932 225440	Facsimile: (+44) (0) 1562 888 382
Web Site: www.stratstone.com	Web Site: www.hwm.co.uk	Web Site: www.stratstone.com
E-Mail: mayfairastonmartin@stratstone.com	E-Mail: sales@hwm.co.uk	E-Mail:

	France	
West Sussex	Cannes	Paris
Harwoods Aston Martin	Royal Motors Cannes	Auto Performance Paris
Terminus Rd., Chichester, PO19 8TX	1390 Ave. du Campon, 06110 Cannes	25 Ave. Franklin D Roosevelt, 75008, Paris
Telephone: (+44) (0)1243 836500	Telephone: (+33) 4 93 94 84 84	Telephone: (+33) 1 40 75 20 85
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1243 836525	Facsimile: (+33) 4 92 18 16 01	Facsimile: (+33) 1 40 75 20 86
Web Site: www.harwoods.uk.com/astonmartin	Web Site:	Web Site: www.astonmartinparis.com
E-Mail: infoasm@harwoods.uk.com	E-Mail: commercial@royal-motor.com	E-Mail: contact@astonmartinparis.com
West Yorkshire	Lyon	
JCT 600 Aston Martin Brooklands	Auto Performance Lyon	
Ring Road, Lower Wortley, Leeds, LS12 6AA	5 Avenue Maréchal Foch, 69006	
Telephone: (+44) (0) 844 844 3101	Telephone: (+33) 4 37 48 07 07	
Facsimile: (+44) (0)113 3890778	Facsimile: (+33) 4 37 48 07 08	
Web Site: www.jct600.co.uk	Web Site: www.astonmartinlyon.com	
E-Mail: astonmartin.sales@jct600.co.uk	E-Mail: contact@astonmartinlyon.com	



ASTON MARTIN

Germany		
Aachen L. Hauswirth Exclusive Cars GMBH Europaplatz 17-19, 52068 Aachen Telephone: (+49) 241 16604 22 Facsimile: (+49) 241 16604 41 Web Site: www.astonmartin-aachen.de E-Mail: info@astonmartin-aachen.de	Bremen Tamsen GMBH Hauptstraße 55 (B 51), 28816 Stuhr, Bremen Telephone: (+49) 421 80 95 80 Facsimile: (+49) 421 80 95 840 Web Site: www.tamsen.de E-Mail: info@tamsen.de	Dortmund Aston Martin Dortmund Hannoversche Straße 44, 44143 Dortmund Telephone: (+49) 231 91 20 4067 Facsimile: (+49) 231 91 20 4049 Web Site: www.premiumcars-peters.de E-Mail:
Berlin Krauthahn Berlin Nestorstraße 27–29, 10709 Berlin Telephone: (+49) 30 89 60 000 Facsimile: (+49) 30 89 31 667 Web Site: www.krauthahn-berlin.de E-Mail: service@krauthahn-berlin.de	Cologne Royal Motors Kempen GMBH Raderthalgürtel 2, 50968 Cologne Telephone: (+49) 2 21 9347 800 Facsimile: (+49) 2 21 3804 88 Web Site: www.astonmartin-koeln.de E-Mail: info@astonmartin.koeln.de	Dresden Thomas Exclusive Cars GMBH Meissner Straße 34, 01445 Radebeul Telephone: (+49) 351 404 6420 Facsimile: (+49) 351 404 6410 Web Site: www.astonmartin-dresden.de E-Mail: info@astonmartin-dresden.de

Dusseldorf	Hamburg	Memmingen
Aston Martin Dusseldorf	Tamsen GMBH	Aston Martin Allgäu
Willstatterstr. 45, 40549 Dusseldorf	Merkurring 2, 22143 Hamburg	Teramostraße 40, Memmingen, 87700
Telephone: (+49) 211 9446 01	Telephone: (+49) 405 700 3000	Telephone: (+49) 8331 974450
Facsimile: (+49) 211 9446 1730	Facsimile: (+49) 405 700 3040	Facsimile: (+49) 8331 97445 - 15
Web Site: www.astonmartin-duesseldorf.de	Web Site: www.tamsen.de	Web Site: www.astonmartin-allgaeu.de
E-Mail:	E-Mail: info@tamsen.de	E-Mail: info@astonmartin-allgaeu.de
Frankfurt	Mannheim	Munich
Aston Martin Kronberg	Kroymans Autohaus Mannheim GMBH	Aston Martin Munich
Frankfurter Straße, 61476 Kronberg T/S, Frankfurt	Saarburger Ring 19–21, 68229 Mannheim	Odeonsplatz 2, 80539 Munich
Telephone: (+49) 6173 999680	Telephone: (+49) 621 48380–0	Telephone: (+49) 89 2870 120
Facsimile: (+49) 6173 64873	Facsimile: (+49) 621 48380–99	Facsimile: (+49) 89 2870 1222
Web Site: www.astonmartin-kronberg.de	Web Site: www.kroymans-mannheim.de	Web Site: www.astonmartin-muenchen.de
E-Mail:	E-Mail:	E-Mail: astonmartin.muenchen@autohaus-avalon.de

Stuttgart
Schwabengarage AG
Cannstatter Straße 46, 70190 Stuttgart
Telephone: (+49) 711 2803 3642
Facsimile: (+49) 711 2803 3615
Web Site: www.astonmartin-stuttgart.de
E-Mail:



ASTON MARTIN

Holland
Eindhoven
Cito Motors B.V.
Huizingalaan 66, 5628 CM Eindhoven
Telephone: (+31) 40 29 01 110
Facsimile: (+31) 40 24 14 956
Web Site: www.aston-martin.nl
E-Mail: info@astonmartineindhoven.nl

Hilversum
Kroymans Aston Martin B.V.
Soestdijkerstraatweg 66, 1213 XE Hilversum
Telephone: (+31) 35 646 2230
Facsimile: (+31) 35 683 5646
Web Site: www.astonmartin.nl
E-Mail: info@astonmartin.nl

Hong Kong
MF Jebsen Automotive Ltd.
G/F., 196-200 Tsat Tsz Mui Rd, North Point, Hong Kong
Telephone: (+852) 2366 2017
Facsimile: (+852) 2191 9117
Web Site: www.mfjebsen.com
E-Mail: automotive@mfjebsen.com



ASTON MARTIN

Italy		Japan	
Bologna		Nagoya	
EmilianAuto Spa.		Aston Martin Nagoya	
Via de Carracci 6, 40131 Bologna		2-44-20 Shinsakae, Naka-ku, Nagoya 460-0007	
Telephone: (+39) 0 51 638 2111		Telephone: (+81) (0)52 242 0888	
Facsimile: (+39) 0 51 638 2202		Facsimile: (+81) (0)52 242 0878	
Web Site: www.astonmartinbologna.it		Web Site: www.astonmartin-nagoya.co.jp	
E-Mail: info@astonmartinbologna.it		E-Mail: admin@astonmartin-nagoya.com	
Milano		Osaka	
Aston Martin Milano S.R.L.		Aston Martin Osaka Hakko	
Via Monte Rosa, 91, 20149 Milano		1-19-1 Kitahorie, Nishi-ku, Osaka 550-0014	
Telephone: (+39) 02 43510988		Telephone: (+81) (0)6 6531 0078	
Facsimile: (+39) 02 42511652		Facsimile: (+81) (0)6 6531 0118	
Web Site: www.astonmartinmilano.it		Web Site: www.astonmartin-osaka.co.jp	
E-Mail: info@astonmartinmilano.it		E-Mail: astonmartin-osaka@hakko-group.co.jp	
Padova		Osaka	
Aston Martin Padova S.R.L.		Aston Martin Osaka Hakko	
Via Nona Strada, 23/L, 35129 Padova		1-19-1 Kitahorie, Nishi-ku, Osaka 550-0014	
Telephone: (+39) 049 807 9516		Telephone: (+81) (0)6 6531 0078	
Facsimile: (+39) 049 807 9464		Facsimile: (+81) (0)6 6531 0118	
Web Site: www.astonmartinpadova.it		Web Site: www.astonmartin-osaka.co.jp	
E-Mail: info@astonmartinpadova.it		E-Mail: astonmartin-osaka@hakko-group.co.jp	
Rome		Osaka	
Aston Martin Rome		Aston Martin Osaka Hakko	
Via F. Siacchi 44, 00197 Rome		1-19-1 Kitahorie, Nishi-ku, Osaka 550-0014	
Telephone: (+39) 06808 2487		Telephone: (+81) (0)6 6531 0078	
Facsimile: (+39) 06808 2415		Facsimile: (+81) (0)6 6531 0118	
Web Site: www.astonmartinroma.it		Web Site: www.astonmartin-osaka.co.jp	
E-Mail: info@astonmartinroma.it		E-Mail: astonmartin-osaka@hakko-group.co.jp	

	Middle East	
Tokyo	Al-Khobar	Beirut
Aston Martin Akasaka	Haji Hussein Alireza	Mana Automotive S.A.L.
Akasaka Showroom, 4–9–25 Akasaka, Minato-ku, Tokyo 107–0052	King Faisal Rd., PO Box 269, 31952 Al-Khobar	Aston Martin & Land Rover Building, Chouran, Unesco, Verdun, PO Box 11–5800, Beirut
Telephone: (+81) (0)3 5411 2332	Telephone: (+966) 3 858 8800	Telephone: (+961) 1 771000
Facsimile: (+81) (0)3 3479 0774	Facsimile: (+966) 3 857 6686	Facsimile: (+961) 1 785205
Web Site: www.astonmartin-akasaka.com	Web Site: www.hha.com.sa	Web Site:
E-Mail: info@astonmartin-akasaka.com	E-Mail: contact@hha.com.sa	E-Mail: astonmartin@tewtelgroup.com
	Bahrain	
Atlantic Cars Limited	Montana Motors	Doha
2–3–3 Azabudai, Minato-ku, Tokyo 106–0041	PO Box 28070, Riffa	Horizon Automobiles
Telephone: (+81) (0)3 3583 8611	Telephone: (+973) 1 766 9999	PO Box 80408, Doha
Facsimile: (+81) (0)3 3583 8613	Facsimile: (+973) 1 766 8888	Telephone: (+974) 594 4111
Web Site: www.astonmartin.co.jp	Web Site: www.montanamotors.com	Facsimile: (+974) 458 2444
E-Mail: atlantic_cars@astonmartin.co.jp	E-Mail: montana@batelco.com.bh	Web Site:
		E-Mail:

		Monaco
Dubai	Kuwait	Monte Carlo
Al Habtoor Motors Co. (LLC)	Premier International Motors Group Co Wll	British Motors SAM
Sharjah Rd., Port Saeed Area, Dubai	PO Box 4296, Safat 13043	15 Boulevard Princesse Charlotte, 98000 Monte Carlo
Telephone: (+971) 4 264 4492	Telephone: (+965) 483 7344	Telephone: (+377) 97 978 978
Facsimile: (+971) 4 264 4422	Facsimile: (+965) 481 7488	Facsimile: (+377) 97 978 989
Web Site: www.habtoormotors.com	Web Site: www.kapicogroup.com	Web Site:
E-Mail:	E-Mail: info@astonmartin-kuwait.com	E-Mail: british-motors@british-motors.mc
Jeddah	Riyadh	
Haji Hussein Alireza	Haji Hussein Alireza	
PO Box 40, Jeddah 21411	PO Box 87106	
Telephone: (+966) 2 642 3509	Telephone: (+966) 1 493 4444	
Facsimile: (+966) 2 642 6435	Facsimile: (+966) 1 493 6443	
Web Site: www.hha.com.sa	Web Site: www.hha.com.sa	
E-Mail: contact@hha.com.sa	E-Mail: contact@hha.com.sa	



ASTON MARTIN

New Zealand
Auckland
Independent Prestige Limited
150 Great North Rd., Grey Lynn, Auckland
Telephone: (+64) (0) 9 360 3202
Facsimile: (+64) (0) 9 361 6403
Web Site: www.astonmartin.co.nz
E-Mail: sales@iprestige.co.nz



ASTON MARTIN

Northern Ireland
Antrim
Charles Hurst Limited
62 Boucher Rd., Belfast, BT12 6LR
Telephone: (+44) (0) 28 9038 1721
Facsimile: (+44) (0) 28 9066 2355
Web Site: www.charleshurstgroup.co.uk
E-Mail:



ASTON MARTIN

Norway
Oslo
As Insignia
Sofienberggaten 35, N-0558 Oslo
Telephone: (+47) 2323 3377
Facsimile: (+47) 2323 3301
Web Site: www.insignia.no
E-Mail:



ASTON MARTIN

Portugal	Russia	Scotland
Lisbon	Moscow	Lothian
AML Sport S.A. Lisboa	Aston Martin Moscow	Murray Motor Company
Rua António Enes 21 A, 1050-023 Lisbon	1, Kutuzovsky prospect, 121248	6 Bankhead Drive, Sighthill, Edinburgh, EH11 4DJ
Telephone: (+351) 21 31 92 380	Telephone: (+7) 495 229 0007	Telephone: (+44) (0) 131 442 2800
Facsimile: (+351) 21 31 92 389	Facsimile: (+7) 495 258 1667	Facsimile: (+44) (0) 131 468 7219
Web Site:	Web Site: www.astonmartin.ru	Web Site: www.murrayastonmartin.co.uk
E-Mail:	E-Mail: info@astonmartin.ru	E-Mail: murraymotorco@jmggroup.co.uk

Porto
AML Sport, S.A
Rua Delfim Ferreira, 424-460, 4100-199 Porto
Telephone: (+351) 226 158 620
Facsimile: (+351) 226 158 639
Web Site:
E-Mail:



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Singapore**Aston Martin Lagonda (SEA) PTE Ltd.**

Number 1,
Tuas Basin Link, Singapore 638755

Telephone: (+65) 6862 5868
Facsimile: (+65) 6862 5388
Web Site: www.astonmartin.com.sg
E-Mail: enquiries@astonmartin.com.sg



ASTON MARTIN

South Africa**Cape Town****Aston Martin Cape Town**

The V & A Waterfront, Corner Dock Rd. and Breakwater
Boulevard, Cape Town 8002

Telephone: (+27) 21 425 2007
Facsimile:
Web Site:
E-Mail: info@astonmartin.co.za

Johannesburg**Aston Martin Sandton**

Sandton Isle, Corner Rivonia and Linden Rd., Sandton 2196

Telephone: (+27) 11 301 7100
Facsimile: (+27) 11 301 7101
Web Site:
E-Mail: info@astonmartin.co.za

Spain**Barcelona****Aston Martin Barcelona**

Roger de Llúria, 115, 08037 Barcelona

Telephone: (+34) 93 215 21 70
Facsimile: (+34) 93 215 21 74
Web Site: www.astonmartinbcn.com
E-Mail: ventas.astonmartin@quadis.es

Madrid**C. de Salamanca SA**

Zurbano, 93–95, 28003 Madrid

Telephone: (+34) 91 554 8293
Facsimile: (+34) 91 553 5206
Web Site: www.cdesalamanca.com
E-Mail: ventas.zb@cdesalamanca.com

	Switzerland	
Marbella	Geneva	Safenwil
C. de Salamanca SA	Keller Motorcars	Emil Frey AG
Carretera de Cádiz, KM 171, San Pedro de Alcántara, 29670 Marbella	2 Rue du Grand Pré, 1202 Geneva	Autocenter Safenwil, Industrie Nord, 5745 Safenwil
Telephone: (+34) 952 78 52 50	Telephone: (+41) 22 919 0500	Telephone: (+41) 62 788 8807
Facsimile: (+34) 952 78 03 66	Facsimile: (+41) 22 919 0509	Facsimile: (+41) 62 788 8260
Web Site: www.cdesalamanca.com	Web Site: www.kellermotorcars.ch	Web Site: www.astonmartin.ch
E-Mail: ventas1.spedro@cdesalamanca.com	E-Mail: geneve@kellermotorcars.ch	E-Mail: astonmartin-safenwil@emilfrey.ch
Valencia	Lugano	Zurich
Aston Martin Valencia	Garage Tarcisio Pasta SA	Emil Frey AG
Ibiza, 16, 46024 Valencia	Via Monteceneri 1, 6593 Cadenazzo	Badenerstrasse 600, 8048 Zurich
Telephone: (+34) 96 331 98 08	Telephone: (+41) (0) 91 850 2024	Telephone: (+41) (0) 44 495 2515
Facsimile: (+34) 96 331 98 14	Facsimile: (+41) (0) 91 850 2021	Facsimile: (+41) (0) 44 495 2305
Web Site: www.astonmartinvalencia.com	Web Site: www.tpasta.ch	Web Site: www.astonmartin.ch
E-Mail: ventas.astonmartin@quadis.es	E-Mail: astonmartin@tpasta.ch	E-Mail: astonmartin@emilfrey.ch

United States of America**Arizona****Scottsdale Aston Martin**

6825 East McDowell Rd., Scottsdale, AZ 85257

Telephone: (+1) 480 421 7240

Facsimile: (+1) 480 421 3805

Web Site: www.astonmartinscottsdale.com

E-Mail:

California**Aston Martin Marin**

195 Casa Buena Drive, Corte Madera, CA 94925

Telephone: (+1) 415 496 2100

Facsimile: (+1) 415 496 2170

Web Site: www.astonmartinmarin.com

E-Mail:

Aston Martin Newport Beach

1540 Jamboree Rd., Newport Beach, California - CA 92660

Telephone: (+1) 949 999 5500

Facsimile: (+1) 949 999 5501

Web Site: www.amofoc.comE-Mail: sales@amofoc.com**Aston Martin of Beverly Hills**

8833 West Olympic Boulevard, Beverly Hills, CA 90211

Telephone: (+1) 310 659 4050

Facsimile: (+1) 310 625 9656

Web Site: www.astonmartinbeverlyhills.com

E-Mail:

Aston Martin of San Diego

5202 Kearney Mesa Rd., San Diego, CA 92111

Telephone: (+1) 858 541 0200

Facsimile: (+1) 858 541 7696

Web Site: www.astonmartinofsandiego.com

E-Mail:

Aston Martin Silicon Valley

66 East Main St., Los Gatos, CA 95030

Telephone: (+1) 408 354 4000

Facsimile: (+1) 408 354 6285

Web Site: www.astonmartinsiliconvalley.com

E-Mail:

Cole European 2103 North Main St., Walnut Creek, CA 94596 Telephone: (+1) 925 935 2653 Facsimile: (+1) 925 935 7735 Web Site: www.coleeuropean.com E-Mail:	Galpin Aston Martin 15500 Roscoe Boulevard, Van Nuys, CA 91406 Telephone: (+1) 818 894 3800 Facsimile: (+1) 818 922 3668 Web Site: www.galpinastonmartin.com E-Mail:	Connecticut Miller Motorcars Inc. 275 West Putnam Ave., Greenwich, CT 06830 Telephone: (+1) 203 629 4726 Facsimile: (+1) 203 629 3418 Web Site: www.millermotorcars.com E-Mail:
Desert European 71-387 Highway 111, Rancho Mirage, CA 92270 Telephone: (+1) 760 773 5000 Facsimile: (+1) 760 773 4406 Web Site: www.deserteuropean.com E-Mail:	Colorado Sill-Terhar Aston Martin PO Box 344, Broomfield, Denver, CO 80038 Telephone: (+1) 303 469 1801 Facsimile: (+1) 720 284 0792 Web Site: www.peopleastonmartin.com E-Mail:	Florida Aston Martin Naples 850 Tamiami Trail North, Naples, FL 34102 Telephone: (+1) 239 280 5103 Facsimile: (+1) 239 263 8058 Web Site: www.astonmartinnaples.com E-Mail:

Aston Martin of Tampa Bay
320 East Fletcher Ave., Tampa, FL 33612
Telephone: (+1) 813 371 8200
Facsimile: (+1) 813 371 8199
Web Site: www.astonmartinoftampa.com
E-Mail: info@astonmartinoftampa.com

Aston Martin Palm Beach
915 South Dixie Highway, West Palm Beach, FL 33401
Telephone: (+1) 561 659 6206
Facsimile: (+1) 561 832 7176
Web Site: www.palmbeachmotorcars.com
E-Mail:

The Collection
200 Bird Rd., Coral Gables, FL 33146
Telephone: (+1) 305 444 5555
Facsimile: (+1) 305 446 4046
Web Site: www.thecollection.com
E-Mail:

Georgia
Aston Martin of Atlanta
11875 Alpharetta Highway, Roswell, GA 30076
Telephone: (+1) 678 802 5007
Facsimile: (+1) 678 802 5019
Web Site: www.astonmartinus.com
E-Mail:

Illinois
Lake Forest Sports Cars Limited
990 North Shore Drive, Lake Bluff, IL 60044
Telephone: (+1) 847 295 6560
Facsimile: (+1) 847 295 8849
Web Site: www.ifsc.com
E-Mail: sales@ifsc.com

Massachusetts
Aston Martin of New England
85 Linden St., Waltham, MA 02452
Telephone: (+1) 781 547 5959
Facsimile: (+1) 781 547 5957
Web Site: www.astonmartin-lotus.com
E-Mail: info@astonmartin-lotus.com

Michigan	Nevada	Ray Catena Aston Martin
Aston Martin of Troy	Gaudin Aston Martin of Las Vegas	910 US Route 1, Edison, NJ 08817
1767 Maplelawn, Troy, MI 48084	7200 West Sahara Ave., Las Vegas, NV 89117	Telephone: (+1) 732 205 9000
Telephone: (+1) 248 643 6900	Telephone: (+1) 702 284 7000	Facsimile: (+1) 732 205 9101
Facsimile: (+1) 248 643 9261	Facsimile: (+1) 702 221 4422	Web Site: www.raycatena-astonmartin.com
Web Site: www.astonmartinoftroy.com	Web Site: www.jplv.net	E-Mail:
E-Mail: info@astonmartinoftroy.com	E-Mail:	
Missouri	New Jersey	New York
Moore Aston Martin	F.C. Kerbeck Aston Martin	Aston Martin Long Island
14116 Manchester Rd., St. Louis, MO 63011	100 Route 73 North, Palmyra, NJ 08065	1060 Northern Blvd., Roslyn, NY 11576
Telephone: (+1) 800 524 7278	Telephone: (+1) 856 829 8200	Telephone: (+1) 516 478 4326
Facsimile: (+1) 636 779 2024	Facsimile: (+1) 856 829 7009	Facsimile: (+1) 516 478 4327
Web Site: www.moorejaguar.com	Web Site: www.fckerbeck.net	Web Site: www.astonmartinlongisland.com
E-Mail:	E-Mail: info@fckerbeck.net	E-Mail: srodd@millermotorcars.com

North Carolina	Texas	Virginia
Foreign Cars Aston Martin	Aston Martin Dallas	Aston Martin Tysons
5603 Roanne Way, Greensboro, NC 27409	5333 Lemmon Ave., Dallas, TX 75209	8545 Leesbueg Pike, Vienna, VA 22182
Telephone: (+1) 336 294 0200	Telephone: (+1) 214 522 1007	Telephone: (+1) 703 564 6350
Facsimile: (+1) 336 294 9109	Facsimile: (+1) 214 353 3550	Facsimile: (+1) 703 564 6345
Web Site: www.foreigncarsitalia.com	Web Site: www.amdallas.com	Web Site: www.astonmartintysons.com
E-Mail:	E-Mail:	E-Mail:
Ohio	Star Motor Cars	Washington
Midwestern Auto Group		Park Place Aston Martin
6335 Perimeter Loop Rd., Dublin, OH 43017	7000 Katy Rd., Houston, TX 77024	13710 Northup Way, Bellevue, WA 98005
Telephone: (+1) 614 889 2571	Telephone: (+1) 713 868 6813	Telephone: (+1) 425 562 1000
Facsimile: (+1) 614 793 7971	Facsimile: (+1) 713 868 6814	Facsimile: (+1) 425 649 9875
Web Site: www.magastonmartin.com	Web Site: www.starmotorcarsastonmartin.com	Web Site: www.parkplaceastonmartin.com
E-Mail:	E-Mail: amsales@starmotors.com	E-Mail:

Wales

South Glamorgan

Stratstone Aston Martin Cardiff

Cambria House, 156 North Rd., Cardiff, CF14 3BH

Telephone: (+44) (0) 2920 695700

Facsimile: (+44) (0) 2920 695718

Web Site: www.stratstone.com

E-Mail: cardiffastonmartin@stratstone.com



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN



ASTON MARTIN

Alphabetical Index

A

Accessory Power Socket	3.31
Acknowledge messages	4.6
Advanced Restraints System	3.18
Airbags	3.16
Alarm	
Movement Sensor (Option)	2.11
Tilt Sensor (Option)	2.11
Ambient Temperature Display	4.24
Anti Corrosion Inspection	A.12
Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS)	5.12
Approach Lighting	2.10
Ashtray and Cigar Lighter (Option)	3.32
Aston Martin Assistance	B.1
Aston Martin Warranties	C.1

Audio

Auxiliary Functions	8.32
CD Changer Functions	8.24
Essentials	8.4
iPod and USB Functions	8.28
Radio Functions	8.10
Satellite Radio Functions	8.16
Automatic Transmission	
Limp-Home Mode	5.9
Park Override	5.9
PRND Buttons	5.4
Sport Mode	5.8
Touchtronic Mode	5.6

B

Battery Charge	11.34
Battery Disconnect Switch	11.37
Battery Maintenance	11.33
Battery Protection Mode	11.38
Brake Pad 'Bedding-in'	11.14
Brakes	
Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS)	5.12
Footbrake	5.11
Parking brake	5.13
Bulb Changing	11.46
Bulb Kit	11.45

C	Controls	Day Time Running Lamps 4.18
Catalytic Converters 5.17	Centre Stack 4.10	Deadlocking 2.10
CD Changer Functions 8.24	Instrument Cluster 4.4	Dealer Directory D.1
Child Seats 3.24	Convertible Roof (Volante)	Defrosting and Demisting
Child Safety 3.23	Deployable Rollbars 3.28, 6.9	Automatic 7.6
Tether Anchor 3.26	Fabric Cleaning 11.53	Manual 7.7
Cleaning	Manual Operation 6.6	Deployable Rollbars (Volante) 3.28, 6.9
Upholstery, Carpets and Seats 11.54	Roof Operation 6.2	Door Mirrors 3.8
Climate Control	Wind Deflector 6.11	Auto Fold 3.9
Automatic Operation 7.6	Cruise Control 4.22	Power Fold 3.9
Control Switches 7.3	Cup Holder 3.29	Drive-Away Locking 2.10
Manual Operation 7.7	D	Driving Safety 5.2
Operating Tips 7.2	Dangerous Substances 11.4	Driving Techniques 5.21
Condensation, Headlamp Units 11.45	Data Recording 1.8	

E	G	
Electric Windows3.32	Garage Door Opener 2.14	Headlamp Condensation 11.45
Emergency Items11.6	Operation 2.16	Headlamp Levelling 4.18
First Aid Kit (Option)11.6	Programming 2.15	Heated Rear Window Switch 7.3
Tire Sealant Kit11.6	Reprogramming a Single HomeLink® Button 2.18	Homesafe 2.11
Emission Warranty11.3	Rolling Code Synchronization 2.16	Hood - Opening and Closing 11.8
Emotion Control Unit2.2	Gear Position Indicator Display 4.5	Horn 4.19
F	H	I
Fog Lamp Switch4.12	Hands-Free Phone	Ignition Control 4.13
Footbrake5.11	Connecting a Phone 9.6	Interior Mirrors
Fuel	Functions 9.2	Automatic Dimming 3.8
Catalytic Converters5.17	Making Calls 9.11	Vanity 3.8
Filler Flap Emergency Release4.19	Receiving Calls 9.11	Interior Storage 3.29
Fuel Filler Cap5.16	Removing a Phone 9.10	iPod and USB Functions 8.28
Fuel Gauge4.4	Hazard Warning Lamps 4.11	iPod and USB Ports 3.30
Fuses11.41		

L	M	P
Lamps On Warning 4.18	Maintenance 11.7	Paint Work 11.51
Levels	Bulb Changing 11.46	Park Override 5.9
Brake Fluid 11.12	Fluid Levels 11.10	Parking Assist
Engine Coolant 11.13	Vehicle Jacking 11.5	Front and Rear (Option) 5.19
Engine Oil 11.11	Maintenance Items	Rear 5.18
Power Steering Fluid 11.13	Battery Conditioner 11.8	Parking brake 5.13
Washer Fluid 11.10	Bulb Kit 11.45	Passive Anti-Theft System 2.12
Licence Plate Lamps 11.47	Tire Sealant Kit 11.26	Perchlorate Material 1.6
Limp-home Mode 5.9	Tool Kit 11.7	Power Fold Door Mirrors 3.9
Locking the Vehicle 2.6	Master Lamp Switch 4.17	PRND Buttons 5.4
Low Outside Temperature Warning 4.10	Maximum Engine Speed 5.8	Q
	Memory Mirrors 3.9	Quick Reference Guide 1.7
	Memory Seats 3.5	
	Emergency Stop 3.7	
	Message Centre (Left) 4.4	
	Message Centre (Right) 4.5	
	Mirrors 3.8	

R

Radio Functions	8.10
Reading Lamps	3.33
Replacement of Airbag Units Record	A.15
Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners Record	A.15
Rollbars (Volante)	3.28, 6.9
Roof Operation (Volante)	6.2

S

Safety Defects - Reporting	1.9
Satellite Navigation	
Advanced Mode	10.17
Advanced Mode Settings	10.14
Demo	10.7
Easy Mode	10.10
Easy Mode Settings	10.9
Map Updates	10.3
System Controls	10.4

Satellite Radio Functions	8.16
Seat Adjustment	3.4
Seat Back Release	3.5
Seat Belts	3.12
Care and Maintenance	11.55
Child Restraints	3.15
Seat Controls	3.2
Service Periods	A.4
Service Record	A.9
Service Schedules	A.4
Servicing Precautions	11.3
Side Marker Lamps	11.47

Specifications

Brakes	12.5
Engine	12.2
Exterior Features	12.11
Interior Features	12.12
Performance	12.2
Recommended Fluids	12.12
Steering	12.4
Suspension	12.5
Weights	12.11
Wheel Nut Torque	12.6
Wheels and Tires	12.5
Sport Mode (Auto Only)	
Status	4.4
Starting the Engine	5.2

Steering Wheel Adjustment	3.7	Tires	
Storage	3.29	Safety Practices	11.24
Switches and Controls		Sidewall Information	11.18
Information and Warning Symbols	4.6	Terminology	11.25
Instrument Cluster	4.4	Uniform Tire Quality Grades (USA)	11.17
Overview	4.2	Vehicle Loading	11.21
Stalk Controls	4.16	Touchtronic Mode	5.6
T		Towing	11.32
Tachometer	4.6	Traction Control	5.15
Tether Anchors	3.26	Transmission Control Switches	4.10
Tire Pressure Monitoring	4.24	Trip Computer	4.20
Tire Sealant Kit	11.26	Trip Meter	4.4
		Trunk Emergency Release	2.9
		U	
		Umbrella	3.34
		Unlocking the Vehicle	2.5
		Unnecessary Battery Drain	4.15
		V	
		Vanity Mirror	3.8
		Vehicle Identification	1.8
		Vehicle Jacking	11.5
		Vehicle Key	2.2
		Vehicle Provenance	1.10
		Vehicle Storage	11.55
		Vehicle Tool Kit	11.7
		W	
		Wheel Nut Torque	12.6
		Wind Deflector (Volante)	6.11
		Window Reset	11.50
		Windows	3.32
		Wipers	4.16